

Manual | EN

Automation Interface

TwinCAT 3

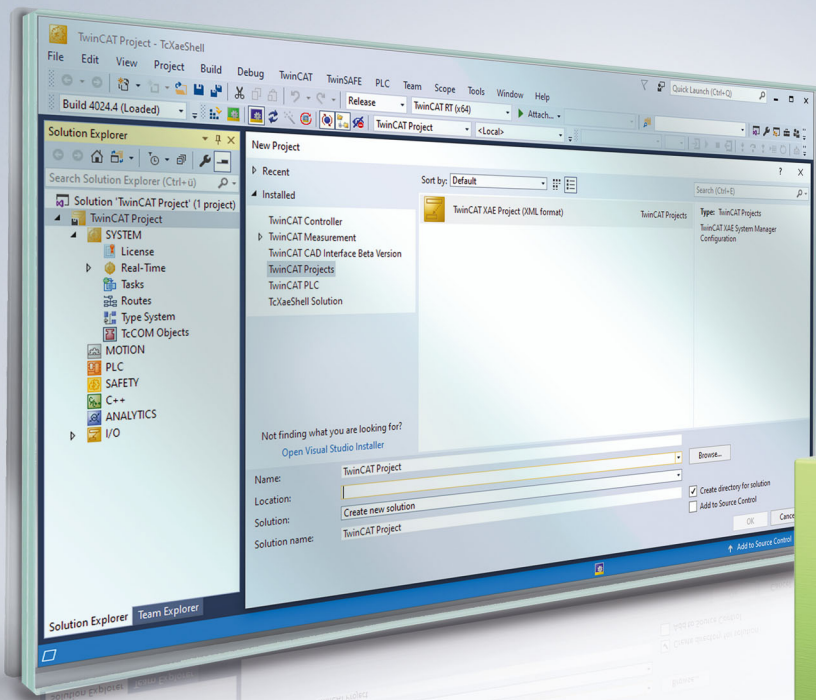


Table of Contents

1 Foreword	7
1.1 Notes on the documentation	7
1.2 Safety instructions	8
1.3 Notes on information security.....	9
2 Overview	10
2.1 Product description	10
2.2 Version overview.....	12
2.3 Frequently Asked Questions	15
3 Installation	17
3.1 System requirements	17
3.2 Installation	17
4 Configuration	20
4.1 Quickstart	20
4.2 Basics.....	20
4.2.1 Accessing TwinCAT configuration	20
4.2.2 Browsing TwinCAT configuration	23
4.2.3 Custom TreeItem Parameters.....	25
4.2.4 TwinCAT Project Template	26
4.2.5 Implementing a COM Message Filter.....	26
4.2.6 Handling different Visual Studio versions.....	30
4.2.7 Silent Mode	31
4.3 Best practice	31
4.3.1 Visual Studio	31
4.3.2 Licensing.....	38
4.3.3 System	40
4.3.4 ADS.....	53
4.3.5 PLC	56
4.3.6 I/O	70
4.3.7 TcCOM.....	95
4.3.8 C++	100
4.3.9 Measurement	103
4.3.10 Motion	111
4.3.11 Safety.....	113
5 API	115
5.1 Reference.....	115
5.2 ITcSysManager	116
5.2.1 ITcSysManager	116
5.2.2 ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration	118
5.2.3 ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration.....	118
5.2.4 ITcSysManager::SaveConfiguration	119
5.2.5 ITcSysManager::ActivateConfiguration.....	119
5.2.6 ITcSysManager::IsTwinCATStarted.....	119
5.2.7 ITcSysManager::StartRestartTwinCAT	119

5.2.8	ITcSysManager::LinkVariables	120
5.2.9	ITcSysManager::UnlinkVariables	120
5.2.10	ITcSysManager2::GetTargetNetId	121
5.2.11	ITcSysManager2::SetTargetNetId.....	121
5.2.12	ITcSysManager2::GetLastErrorMessages	121
5.2.13	ITcSysManager::LookupTreeltem.....	122
5.2.14	ITcSysManager3::LookupTreeltemByld.....	123
5.2.15	ITcSysManager3::ProduceMappingInfo.....	123
5.2.16	ITcSysManager3::ConsumeMappingInfo.....	124
5.3	ITcSmTreeltem.....	124
5.3.1	ITcSmTreeltem	124
5.3.2	ITcSmTreeltem Item Types.....	126
5.3.3	Tree item sub types.....	130
5.3.4	ITcSmTreeltem::ProduceXml.....	158
5.3.5	ITcSmTreeltem::ConsumeXml.....	159
5.3.6	ITcSmTreeltem::CreateChild	160
5.3.7	ITcSmTreeltem::DeleteChild.....	162
5.3.8	ITcSmTreeltem::ImportChild	163
5.3.9	ITcSmTreeltem::ExportChild.....	163
5.3.10	ITcSmTreeltem::LookupChild	163
5.3.11	ITcSmTreeltem::GetLastXmlError.....	164
5.4	ITcPlcProject	164
5.4.1	ITcPlcProject.....	164
5.4.2	ITcPlcProject::GenerateBootProject	165
5.5	ITcPlcPou	165
5.5.1	ITcPlcPou.....	165
5.5.2	IECLanguageTypes	166
5.6	ITcPlcDeclaration	166
5.7	ITcPlcImplementation.....	167
5.8	ITcPlcIECProject.....	168
5.8.1	ITcPlcIECProject.....	168
5.8.2	PlcImportOptions.....	169
5.8.3	ITcPlcIECProject::PlcOpenExport.....	170
5.8.4	ITcPlcIECProject::PlcOpenImport	170
5.8.5	ITcPlcIECProject::SaveAsLibrary.....	171
5.9	ITcPlcLibraryManager	171
5.9.1	ITcPlcLibraryManager	171
5.9.2	ITcPlcLibraryManager::AddLibrary.....	173
5.9.3	ITcPlcLibraryManager::AddPlaceholder.....	173
5.9.4	ITcPlcLibraryManager::InsertRepository.....	174
5.9.5	ITcPlcLibraryManager::InstallLibrary.....	174
5.9.6	ITcPlcLibraryManager::MoveRepository	174
5.9.7	ITcPlcLibraryManager::RemoveReference	174
5.9.8	ITcPlcLibraryManager::RemoveRepository	175
5.9.9	ITcPlcLibraryManager::ScanLibraries	175
5.9.10	ITcPlcLibraryManager::SetEffectiveResolution.....	176

5.9.11	ITcPlcLibraryManager::UninstallLibrary	176
5.10	ITcPlcReferences	177
5.11	ITcPlcLibrary	177
5.12	ITcPlcLibraries	178
5.12.1	ITcPlcLibraries	178
5.12.2	ITcPlcLibraries::get_Item	178
5.13	ITcPlcLibRef	178
5.14	ITcPlcPlaceholderRef	179
5.15	ITcPlcLibRepository	179
5.16	ITcPlcLibRepositories	180
5.16.1	ITcPlcLibRepositories	180
5.16.2	ITcPlcLibRepositories::get_Item	180
5.17	ITcPlcTaskReference	181
6	Samples	182
6.1	Sample downloads	182
6.2	Scripting Container	182
6.2.1	Scripting Container	182
6.2.2	Projects	183
6.3	CodeGenerationDemo	186
6.4	Visual Studio Plugin - PlcVersionInfo	188
7	Appendix	190
7.1	Miscellaneous error codes	190

1 Foreword

1.1 Notes on the documentation

This description is only intended for the use of trained specialists in control and automation engineering who are familiar with applicable national standards.

It is essential that the documentation and the following notes and explanations are followed when installing and commissioning the components.

It is the duty of the technical personnel to use the documentation published at the respective time of each installation and commissioning.

The responsible staff must ensure that the application or use of the products described satisfy all the requirements for safety, including all the relevant laws, regulations, guidelines and standards.

Disclaimer

The documentation has been prepared with care. The products described are, however, constantly under development.

We reserve the right to revise and change the documentation at any time and without prior announcement. No claims for the modification of products that have already been supplied may be made on the basis of the data, diagrams and descriptions in this documentation.

Trademarks

Beckhoff®, TwinCAT®, TwinCAT/BSD®, TC/BSD®, EtherCAT®, EtherCAT G®, EtherCAT G10®, EtherCAT P®, Safety over EtherCAT®, TwinSAFE®, XFC®, XTS® and XPlanar® are registered trademarks of and licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH.

Other designations used in this publication may be trademarks whose use by third parties for their own purposes could violate the rights of the owners.

Patent Pending

The EtherCAT Technology is covered, including but not limited to the following patent applications and patents:

EP1590927, EP1789857, EP1456722, EP2137893, DE102015105702
with corresponding applications or registrations in various other countries.



EtherCAT® is a registered trademark and patented technology, licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany

Copyright

© Beckhoff Automation GmbH & Co. KG, Germany.

The reproduction, distribution and utilization of this document as well as the communication of its contents to others without express authorization are prohibited.

Offenders will be held liable for the payment of damages. All rights reserved in the event of the grant of a patent, utility model or design.

1.2 Safety instructions

Safety regulations

Please note the following safety instructions and explanations!
Product-specific safety instructions can be found on following pages or in the areas mounting, wiring, commissioning etc.

Exclusion of liability

All the components are supplied in particular hardware and software configurations appropriate for the application. Modifications to hardware or software configurations other than those described in the documentation are not permitted, and nullify the liability of Beckhoff Automation GmbH & Co. KG.

Personnel qualification

This description is only intended for trained specialists in control, automation and drive engineering who are familiar with the applicable national standards.

Description of symbols

In this documentation the following symbols are used with an accompanying safety instruction or note. The safety instructions must be read carefully and followed without fail!

DANGER

Serious risk of injury!

Failure to follow the safety instructions associated with this symbol directly endangers the life and health of persons.

WARNING

Risk of injury!

Failure to follow the safety instructions associated with this symbol endangers the life and health of persons.

CAUTION

Personal injuries!

Failure to follow the safety instructions associated with this symbol can lead to injuries to persons.

NOTE

Damage to the environment or devices

Failure to follow the instructions associated with this symbol can lead to damage to the environment or equipment.



Tip or pointer

This symbol indicates information that contributes to better understanding.

1.3 Notes on information security

The products of Beckhoff Automation GmbH & Co. KG (Beckhoff), insofar as they can be accessed online, are equipped with security functions that support the secure operation of plants, systems, machines and networks. Despite the security functions, the creation, implementation and constant updating of a holistic security concept for the operation are necessary to protect the respective plant, system, machine and networks against cyber threats. The products sold by Beckhoff are only part of the overall security concept. The customer is responsible for preventing unauthorized access by third parties to its equipment, systems, machines and networks. The latter should be connected to the corporate network or the Internet only if appropriate protective measures have been set up.

In addition, the recommendations from Beckhoff regarding appropriate protective measures should be observed. Further information regarding information security and industrial security can be found in our <https://www.beckhoff.com/secguide>.

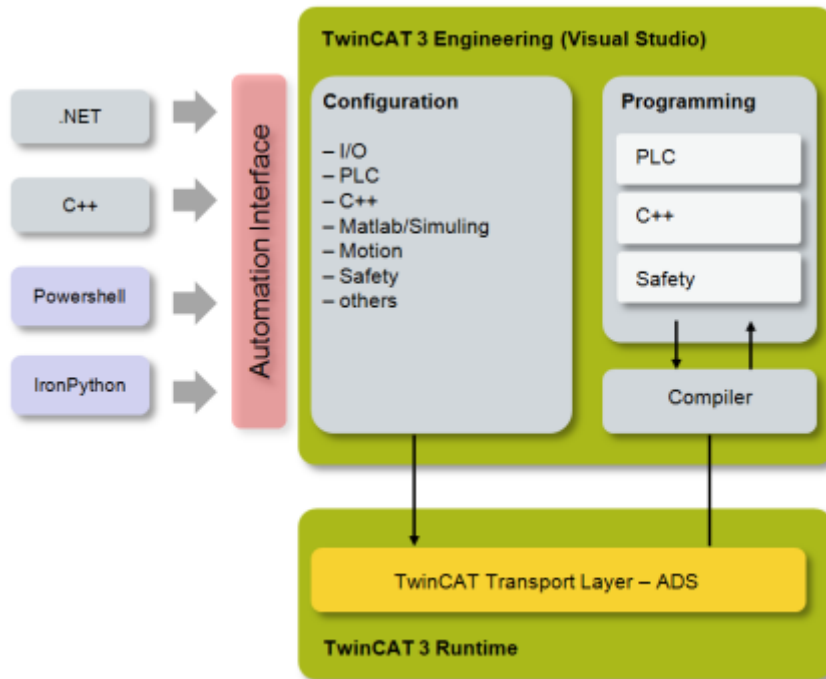
Beckhoff products and solutions undergo continuous further development. This also applies to security functions. In light of this continuous further development, Beckhoff expressly recommends that the products are kept up to date at all times and that updates are installed for the products once they have been made available. Using outdated or unsupported product versions can increase the risk of cyber threats.

To stay informed about information security for Beckhoff products, subscribe to the RSS feed at <https://www.beckhoff.com/secinfo>.

2 Overview

2.1 Product description

The TwinCAT Automation Interface enables the automatic creation and manipulation of TwinCAT XAE configurations via programming/scripting code. The automation of a TwinCAT configuration is available through so-called automation interfaces which can be accessed from all COM-capable programming languages (e.g. C++ or .NET) and also from dynamic script languages - e.g. Windows PowerShell, IronPython or even legacy VBscript. These automation interfaces are bound to the Visual Studio Automation Model and extend Visual Studio with TwinCAT3 features.

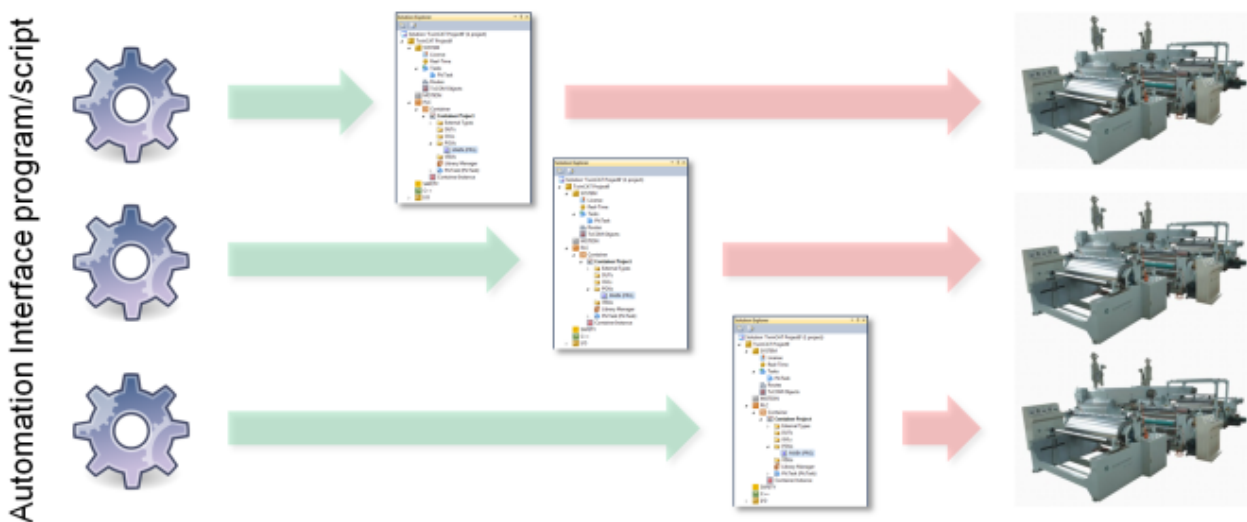


TwinCAT Automation Interface enables an efficient engineering process by giving customers the possibility to automate the configuration of a full TwinCAT solution.

Traditionally, a machine configuration had to be manually adapted to each new project or had even to be created from scratch, which could not only involve a tremendous amount of engineering time and therefore costs but is also error-prone because of human mistakes.



With TwinCAT Automation Interface, the process of adapting TwinCAT configurations to a new environment or even create new TwinCAT configurations from scratch can be automated according to the customers needs.



Readers should continue with the following topics:

Basics

Topic	Description
Creating/Loading TwinCAT XAE configurations > 20	Describes how to create or open a TwinCAT configuration
Navigating TwinCAT XAE > 23	Describes how to navigate through a TwinCAT configuration
Custom tree item parameters > 25	Describes how to access custom parameters of an item. This is important to access configuration parameters of a TwinCAT tree item.
Implementing a COM message filter > 26	Describes how to implement an own COM message filter to circumvent rejected COM calls

Best practice

Topic	Description
Creating and handling PLC projects [► 56]	Describes how to handle PLC projects
Creating and handling PLC POUs [► 64]	Describes how to handle PLC objects/code
Creating and handling PLC Libraries [► 60]	Describes how to handle PLC libraries, repositories and placeholder
Creating and handling MOTION projects [► 111]	Describes how to create TwinCAT Motion projects (NC-Task, Axes, ...)
Creating and handling EtherCAT devices [► 70]	Describes how to create EtherCAT devices and connect them to an EtherCAT topology
Creating and handling TwinCAT Measurement [► 103]	Describes how to handle TwinCAT Measurement projects.
Creating and handling TcCOM modules [► 95]	Describes how to handle TcCOM modules.
Using templates	Describes the process of template generation and template usage.
Creating and handling network variables [► 76]	Describes how to create network variables (publisher/subscriber variables)
Creating and handling Tasks [► 43]	Describes how to create Tasks and link them with other objects (PLC-Projects, ...)
From offline to online configurations [► 50]	Some IO devices need physical address information before the configuration can be activated. This article explains how to retrieve and set this information.
Accessing the Error List window of Visual Studio [► 37]	The Error List can be very helpful for debugging and diagnostic purposes
Accessing window tabs in Visual Studio [► 36]	Describes how to get access to Visual Studio windows.
Handling different versions of Visual Studio [► 30]	Describes how different Versions of Visual Studio can be used for Automation Interface
Attaching to running Visual Studio instances [► 35]	Demonstrates how you can attach to existing (already running) Visual Studio instances to use Automation Interface
Setting TwinCAT target platform [► 34]	Describes how to set the TwinCAT target platform for compilation.

Additionally, this documentation also includes a full [API reference \[► 115\]](#) of all interfaces. The [How to](#) and [Sample \[► 182\]](#) sections offer a free composition of script code fragments, configuration steps and demo projects. They also contain an unsorted and growing list of "real-world" samples.

Also see about this

 [Using Templates \[► 44\]](#)

2.2 Version overview

The following table gives an overview about the available features of the Automation Interface related to TwinCAT 2.11, TwinCAT 3.0, TwinCAT 3.1 and a look-out to future TwinCAT versions which may be subject to change.

Feature	TwinCAT 2.11	TwinCAT 3.0	TwinCAT 3.1	Future versions
General settings				
Importing configuration templates	✓	✓	✓	✓
TwinCAT System Service handling (Run-/Config-mode)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Load/Save/Create/Activate configurations	✓	✓	✓	✓
Support for remote TwinCAT targets	✓	✓	✓	✓
Configuring tasks with process image	✓	✓	✓	✓
Configuring tasks without process image	-	-	✓	✓
Multicore support for tasks	-	✓	✓	✓
Handling of TwinCAT licenses	-	-	-	✓
Route management				
Adding/Removing ADS routes	✓	✓	✓	✓
Broadcast Search	✓	✓	✓	✓
I/O				
Scanning for online devices	✓	✓	✓	✓
Adding/removing devices, boxes and terminals	✓	✓	✓	✓
Parameterization of devices, boxes and terminals	✓	✓	✓	✓
EtherCAT topologies	✓	✓	✓	✓
Network variables	✓	✓	✓	✓
PLC				
Mapping of variables, e.g. with I/Os or axes	✓	✓	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC projects	✓	✓	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC POU's, DUTs, GVLs	-	-	✓	✓

Feature	TwinCAT 2.11	TwinCAT 3.0	TwinCAT 3.1	Future versions
Getting/setting PLC code of POU's, DUTs, GVLs	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC libraries	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC placeholders	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC repositories	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/removing PLC libraries to repositories	-	-	✓	✓
Saving PLC projects as a PLC library	-	-	✓	✓
Compiler and error output handling	-	-	✓	✓
PLCopen XML import/export	-	-	✓	✓
Programing language: Structured Text (ST)	-	-	✓ ²	✓ ²
Programing language: Sequential function chart (SFC)	-	-	✓ ¹	✓ ¹
C++				
Adding/Removing C++ project templates	-	-	-	✓
Compiler and error output handling	-	-	-	✓
Motion				
Adding/Removing NC-Tasks	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/Removing axes	-	-	✓	✓
Parameterization of axes settings	-	-	✓ ³	✓ ³
Mapping of variables, e.g. with PLC	-	-	✓	✓
TcCOM modules				
Adding/Removing TcCOM modules	-	-	✓	✓
Parameterization of TcCOM modules	-	-	✓	✓
Measurement				

Feature	TwinCAT 2.11	TwinCAT 3.0	TwinCAT 3.1	Future versions
Adding/Removing TwinCAT Measurement projects	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/Removing charts	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/Removing axes	-	-	✓	✓
Adding/Removing channels	-	-	✓	✓
Parameterization of charts, axes and channels	-	-	✓	✓
Starting/Stopping records	-	-	✓	✓

Notes	
1	possibility to implement via PLCopen XML
2	possibility to implement source code either in clear-text or PLCopen XML
3	with limitations. Some settings are stored in a binary format and cannot be edited.

2.3 Frequently Asked Questions

- **What is TwinCAT Automation Interface?**

TwinCAT Automation Interface is an interface to access the configuration of TwinCAT from an external application. This enables customers to automate the configuration of TwinCAT.

- **Can I create an offline TwinCAT configuration (without any attached devices)?**

Yes. You can create the TwinCAT configuration offline by manually attaching (without "Scan Devices") all devices and then providing online values, e.g. addresses, later after all devices have been attached. Please see our [samples \[▶ 182\]](#) page for more information. There is also an [How-To sample \[▶ 93\]](#) which shows you how to provide addressing information for pre-configured I/O devices.

- **Which programming and scripting languages are supported?**

Every programming or scripting language that supports the COM object model is supported. Please see our [system requirements \[▶ 17\]](#) page for more information.

- **Which TwinCAT features are accessible via Automation Interface?**

Please see our [version overview \[▶ 12\]](#) page for more information about which TwinCAT features are accessible via Automation Interface.

- **What if I don't find an appropriate programming method or property for a specific setting?**

If you don't find an appropriate Automation Interface method or property for a specific setting, you may use the Import/Export feature of TwinCAT to read/write this setting. Please refer to our article about [custom tree item parameters \[▶ 25\]](#) for more information.

- **Can I automate the configuration of TwinCAT PLC?**

Yes. This feature will be available with TwinCAT 3.1. Please refer to our [version overview \[▶ 12\]](#) page for more information.

- **Can I execute Automation Interface code on TwinCAT XAR (Runtime-only) computers?**

No. To execute Automation Interface code, TwinCAT XAE (Engineering) is needed, because Automation Interface directly accesses the Visual Studio COM object to communicate with the TwinCAT configuration. However, you can use a TwinCAT XAE computer to remotely connect to a TwinCAT runtime and configure it.

- **When should I use ADS and when Automation Interface?**

This is a question which cannot be answered easily because it heavily depends on what you would like to achieve. TwinCAT Automation Interface has been designed primarily to help customers to automate the configuration of TwinCAT. If you want to cyclically read/write values to IOs or PLC variables, our [ADS APIs](#) are probably better suited.

- **Do I need to modify my Automation Interface code if I switch languages in TwinCAT XAE, e.g. from English to German?**

All TwinCAT XAE items that are language dependent (Devices, Boxes, Axes, Channels, ...) can either be accessed via the currently set XAE language or via their english name. For example, if the XAE language is changed from English to German, the term "Channel" will be displayed in XAE as "Kanal" but is still available under the name "Channel" via Automation Interface. To be fully compatible, we recommend to build your Automation Interface code based on english terminology.

Please note: This feature comes with TwinCAT 3.x only! Systems based on TwinCAT 2.x are not language independent!

- **I'm a machine builder and use a TwinCAT configuration template for all machine types and only enable/disable certain I/Os. Can I also do that with Automation Interface?**

Yes. There is an [How-To sample \[▶ 94\]](#) which shows you exactly how to do that.

- **Can I also create ADS routes or execute a Broadcast Search?**

Yes. Please see our [samples \[▶ 182\]](#) and How-To pages for more information.

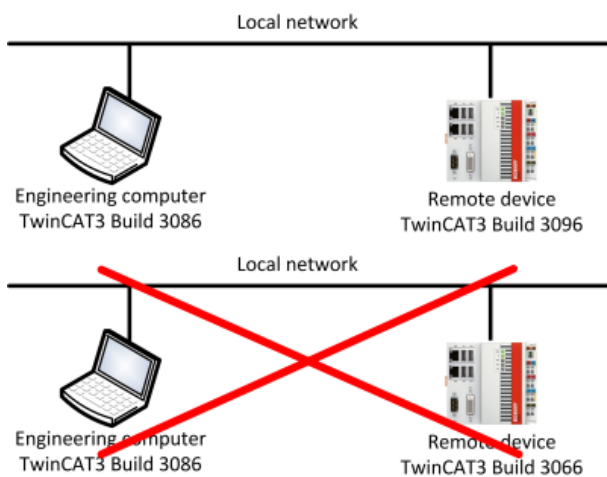
3 Installation

3.1 System requirements

The following chapter lists all hardware and software requirements for the TwinCAT Automation Interface and gives some recommendations for programming and scripting languages.

Hardware and Software

TwinCAT Automation Interface will be automatically installed by TwinCAT setup. Therefore it needs the same hardware and software system requirements as TwinCAT System Manager / TwinCAT 3 XAE (Engineering). When using the Automation Interface to configure a remote TwinCAT device, it is important that the remote version of TwinCAT equals or is higher than on the engineering computer.



Please note that you can execute Automation Interface scripts on 32-bit and 64-bit platforms, however you need to make sure that your program/script has been compiled for and runs in 32-bit mode.

Recommended programming languages

The following programming languages are recommended to use with TwinCAT Automation Interface:

- .NET languages, such as C# or Visual Basic .NET

Please note: Although C++ implementations will also work, we highly recommend using one of the languages above because of their easy and straight-forward programming concepts regarding COM. Most of the sample code in this documentation is based on C#.

Recommended scripting languages

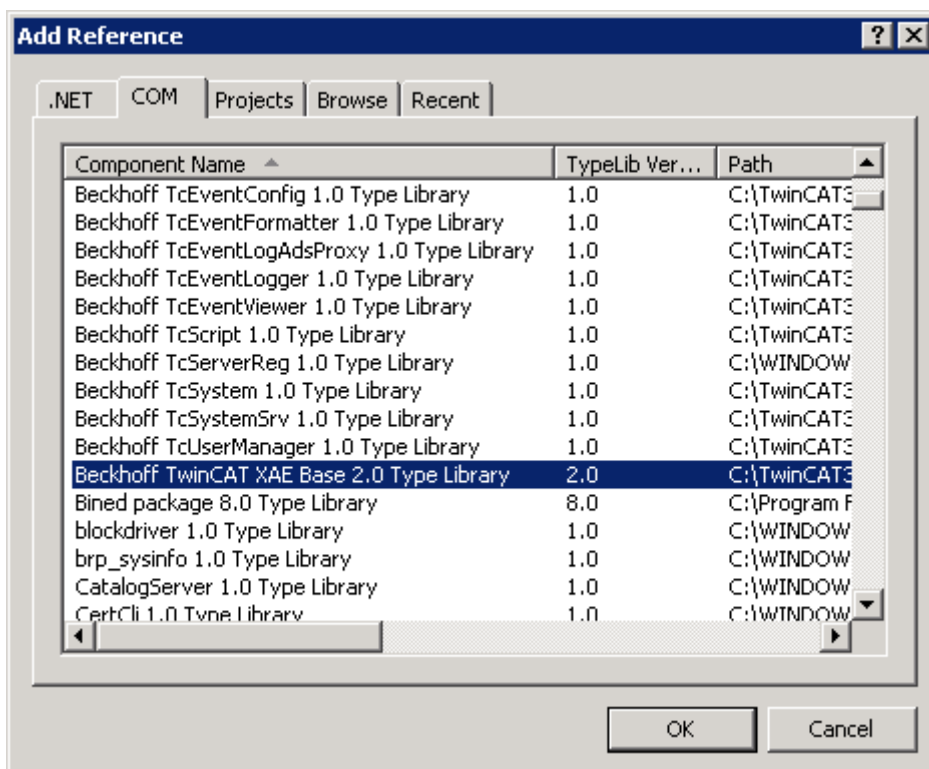
Although every scripting language with COM support may be used to access TwinCAT Automation Interface, we recommend to use the Windows Powershell as it provides the best level of integration between Operating System and application. Please note that at least TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4020.0 is required to use dynamic languages like the Windows Powershell.

3.2 Installation

All files needed for the TwinCAT Automation Interface will be installed automatically during TwinCAT setup. As mentioned in the introduction, the Automation Interface communicates with TwinCAT via COM. All needed COM objects are configured automatically so that COM-capable programming and scripting languages can access these objects.

Using the Automation Interface within a .NET application (C#, VB.NET, ...)

To access the Automation interface from a .NET application, you need to add a reference to the corresponding COM object **Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base** (depending on your TwinCAT version, see table below) within the Visual Studio project.



After the reference has been added, you can access the COM object via the namespace **TCatSysManagerLib**.

Please proceed with the article [Accessing TwinCAT configuration \[► 20\]](#) which explains all further steps in more detail.

Using the Automation Interface within scripting languages

TwinCAT Automation Interface can also be used with COM-capable scripting languages, for example Windows PowerShell or IronPython. As scripting languages are being interpreted at runtime and not compiled, they always have access to all currently registered COM objects in the operating system. Therefore a reference is not needed.

Please proceed with the article [Accessing TwinCAT configuration \[► 20\]](#) which explains all further steps in more detail.

Type library versions

During the TwinCAT product lifecycle, the type library mentioned above may be delivered in different versions because of added functionalities and/or big TwinCAT versions steps. The table below gives an overview about all different type library versions.

Type library name	Type library version	TwinCAT version
Beckhoff TCatSysManager 1.1 Type Library	1.1	TwinCAT 2.11
Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base 2.0 Type Library	2.0	TwinCAT 3.0
Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base 2.1 Type Library	2.1	TwinCAT 3.1
Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base 3.1 Type Library	3.1	TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4020.0 and above

4 Configuration

4.1 Quickstart

Because the TwinCAT Automation Interface provides a lot of possibility, it might sometimes be hard to understand where to start. This quickstart provides a step-by-step introduction into the TwinCAT Automation Interface and the different articles in this documentation.

We recommend to read the following in-depth articles:

Step	Article	Content
1	Visual Studio ProgIDs [▶ 30]	Describes how different Visual Studio versions can be accessed via the Visual Studio API
2	Accessing TwinCAT configuration [▶ 20]	Describes how to use the Automation Interface in order to create a new TwinCAT project. It also covers the co-existence of Visual Studio API and TwinCAT Automation Interface and how they correlate with each other.
3	Navigating TwinCAT configuration [▶ 23]	Describes how to navigate through an opened TwinCAT configuration by using different Automation Interface functionalities.
4	The necessity of a COM MessageFilter [▶ 26]	Describes why every Automation Interface application should implement a custom COM MessageFilter.
5	Silent Mode [▶ 31]	Describes how to turn the Automation Interface "silent"

After these basic articles, the [Best Practice \[▶ 31\]](#) articles may be consulted for different topics like PLC or I/O access via the Automation Interface.

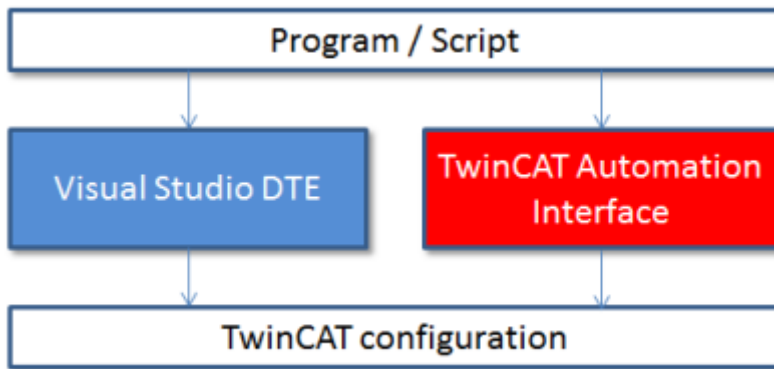
4.2 Basics

4.2.1 Accessing TwinCAT configuration

This chapter describes how to create and access a TwinCAT XAE configuration project via Automation interface. The objective of this creation process is to get access to a TwinCAT XAE project (formerly known as a TwinCAT System Manager configuration). The new TwinCAT XAE project is more sophisticated than the TwinCAT System Manager configuration known from TwinCAT2, which implies a slight concept change of project / configuration handling. TwinCAT 3 supports an extra hierarchical level combining several configurations into a Visual Studio solution container. This can for example be used to organize the configurations of distributed resources into a solution or for packaging HMI projects together with the system configuration. The solution is able to bind together all types of Visual Studio and/or TwinCAT XAE projects. When using the TwinCAT XAE Automation interface, this means an extra level of possibilities.

Basic information

TwinCAT 3 has been fully integrated into Visual Studio to provide users with a standardized and most flexible editor to create and manage TwinCAT projects. To create and/or access a TwinCAT configuration, the combined use of Visual Studio and TwinCAT Automation Interface is possible. For example: If you want to create a new TwinCAT configuration via Automation Interface, you first need to call methods of the Visual Studio API to create a Visual Studio solution container and then add a TwinCAT project by using methods of the TwinCAT Automation Interface. This scenario will be covered in some code snippets below.



In addition, the Visual Studio API (so-called **Visual Studio DTE**) provide developers with many more features, e.g. accessing the [error output window](#). [\[▶ 37\]](#) For more information about Visual Studio DTE please see the Microsoft MSDN website.

Please note:

- When creating a new TwinCAT project within a Visual Studio solution, you need to specify a [path to the TwinCAT project template](#) [\[▶ 26\]](#). Please adapt this path in the code snippets below according to your environment.
- The following code snippets use **dynamic linking** for the Visual Studio DTE objects, which means that the actual type of the object will be determined during the application runtime. In case you do not want to use dynamic linking but instead specify the data type in advance, you need to include the namespace EnvDTE.DTE to your project.

Creating TwinCAT Projects via templates

Please note that you need to add a reference to the COM object **TcatSysManagerLib** and EnvDTE.DTE (Microsoft Development) in order to be able to use the TwinCAT Automation Interface and the Visual Studio API. The ProgID that is used in the GetTypeFromProgID() method depends on the Visual Studio version that should be used. Please have a look at [this](#) [\[▶ 30\]](#) documentation article for more information about the different ProgIDs.

Code Snippet (C#):

```

Type t = System.Type.GetTypeFromProgID("VisualStudio.DTE.10.0");
EnvDTE.DTE dte = System.Activator.CreateInstance(t);

dte.SuppressUI = false;
dte.MainWindow.Visible = true;

if (Directory.Exists(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder"))
    Directory.Delete(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder", true);
Directory.CreateDirectory(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder");
Directory.CreateDirectory(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder\MySolution1");

dynamic solution = dte.Solution;
solution.Create(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder", "MySolution1");
solution.SaveAs(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder\MySolution1\MySolution1.sln");

string template = @"C:\TwinCAT\3.1\Components\Base\PrjTemplate\TwinCAT Project.tsproj"; //path to
project template
dynamic project = solution.AddFromTemplate(template, @"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder\MySolution1",
"MyProject");

ITcSysManager sysManager = project.Object;

sysManager.ActivateConfiguration();
sysManager.StartRestartTwinCAT();

project.Save();
solution.SaveAs(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder\MySolution1\MySolution1.sln");
  
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

You can copy and paste the following code snippet into a textfile and save it as "someName.ps1". After that you can execute it directly via Windows PowerShell.

```
$targetDir = "C:\tmp\TestSolution"
$targetName = "TestSolution.tsp"
$template = "C:\TwinCAT\3.1\Components\Base\PrjTemplate\TwinCAT Project.tsproj"

$dte = new-object -com VisualStudio.DTE.10.0
$dte.SuppressUI = $false
$dte.MainWindow.Visible = $true

if(test-path $targetDir -pathtype container)
{
    Remove-Item $targetDir -Recurse -Force
}

New-Item $targetDir -type directory

$sln = $dte.Solution
$project = $sln.AddFromTemplate($template,$targetDir,$targetName)
$systemManager = $project.Object

$targetNetId = $systemManager.GetTargetNetId()
write-host $targetNetId

$systemManager.ActivateConfiguration()
$systemManager.StartRestartTwinCAT()

$project.Save()
$solutionPath = $targetDir + "\" + $targetName
$sln.SaveAs($solutionPath)
```

Code Snippet (C++):

Within appropriate Header file (e.g the stdafx.h):

```
//the following #import imports EnvDTE based on its LIBID.
#import"libid:80cc9f66-e7d8-4ddd-85b6-d9e6cd0e93e2" version("10.0") lcid("0") raw_interfaces_only
named_guids
// Imports die "Beckhoff TCatSysManager 1.1 Type Library"
#import"libid:3C49D6C3-93DC-11D0-B162-00A0248C244B" version("1.1") lcid("0")
```

Because a known issue within VisualStudio 2010 (SP1), the generated proxy code will not be included into the C++ project. Please use the workaround described in [#import Known Issue import Known Issue](#).

```
#include

using namespace std
using namespace TCatSysManagerLib;
using namespace EnvDTE;

int _tmain(int argc, _TCHAR* argv[])
{
    CoInitialize(NULL); // COM initialisieren
    cout << "Creating VisualStudio.DTE.10.0 ...";

    // creating a new instance of Visual Studio
    CComPtr<_DTE> m_pDTE;
    HRESULT hr = m_pDTE.CoCreateInstance(L"VisualStudio.DTE.10.0", 0, CLSCTX_ALL);
    if (FAILED(hr)) { cout << " FAILED"; return 1; }
    cout << " created." << endl;

    // retrieves the EnvDTE.Solution-Objekt
    CComPtr<_Solution> pSolution;
    m_pDTE->get_Solution(&pSolution);
    CComBSTR strSolutionFolder(_T("C:\\SolutionFolder")); // Solution-main directory (has to exist)
    CComBSTR strSolutionName(_T("MySolution1"));
    CComBSTR strTemplatePath(_T("C:\\TwinCAT\\3.1\\Components\\Base\\PrjTemplate\\TwinCAT
Project.tsproj"));

    CComBSTR strSolutionPath; // Solution-Pfad (doesn't exist!)
    strSolutionPath=strSolutionFolder;
    strSolutionPath.Append(_T("\\"));
    strSolutionPath.Append(strSolutionName);
    strSolutionPath.Append(_T(".sln"));

    // create the solution
    hr = pSolution->Create(strSolutionFolder,strSolutionName);
```

```

    CComBSTR strProjectPath(strSolutionFolder); // project path
    strProjectPath.Append( T("\\"));
    strProjectPath.Append(strSolutionName);
    CComBSTR strProjectName = "MyProject"; // project name // create projekt from a template
    CComPtr pProject;
    hr = pSolution-
>AddFromTemplate(strTemplatePath, strProjectPath, strProjectName, VARIANT_FALSE, &pProject);
    // Wenn z.B. Projekt bereits besteht >> error
    if (FAILED(hr)) { cout << " Project creation FAILED"; return 1; }
    cout << "Project created" << endl;

    // define project automation class (here the Coclass TcSysManager)
    CComPtr pDispatch;
    hr = pProject->get_Object(&pDispatch);

    // retrieve ITcSysManager interface
    CComPtr pSystemManager;
    hr = pDispatch.QueryInterface(&pSystemManager);

    // operate with SystemManager interface
    CComBSTR netId;
    netId = (pSystemManager->GetTargetNetId()).GetBSTR();
    cout << "TargetNetId: " << netId << endl;
    hr = pSystemManager->ActivateConfiguration();
    hr = pSystemManager->StartRestartTwinCAT();

    // save project and solution
    hr = pProject->Save(CComBSTR());
    hr = pSolution->SaveAs(strSolutionPath);
    cout << "Succeeded";
    return 0;
}

```

import Known Issue:

```

    CComPtr<_DTE> m_pDTE;
    CLSID clsid;
    CLSIDFromProgID(L"VisualStudio.DTE.10.0", &clsid);
    CComPtr punk;
    HRESULT hr = GetActiveObject(clsid, NULL, &punk); // retrieve actual instance of Visual
Studio .NET
    m_pDTE = punk;

```

Please note:

[ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration \[► 118\]](#), [ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguraiton \[► 118\]](#) and [ITcSysManager::SaveConfiguration \[► 119\]](#) will create error messages in this case, because the project handling is delegated to the Visual Studio IDE (the Solution and Project instances realized by the DTE object).

4.2.2 Browsing TwinCAT configuration

In a separate article, we have already shown you how to [access TwinCAT \[► 20\]](#) via the Visual Studio Automation Model. This reference to TwinCAT is being represented by an object of type [ITcSysManager \[► 116\]](#). From this point on we would like to discuss now how you can navigate through the TwinCAT configuration.

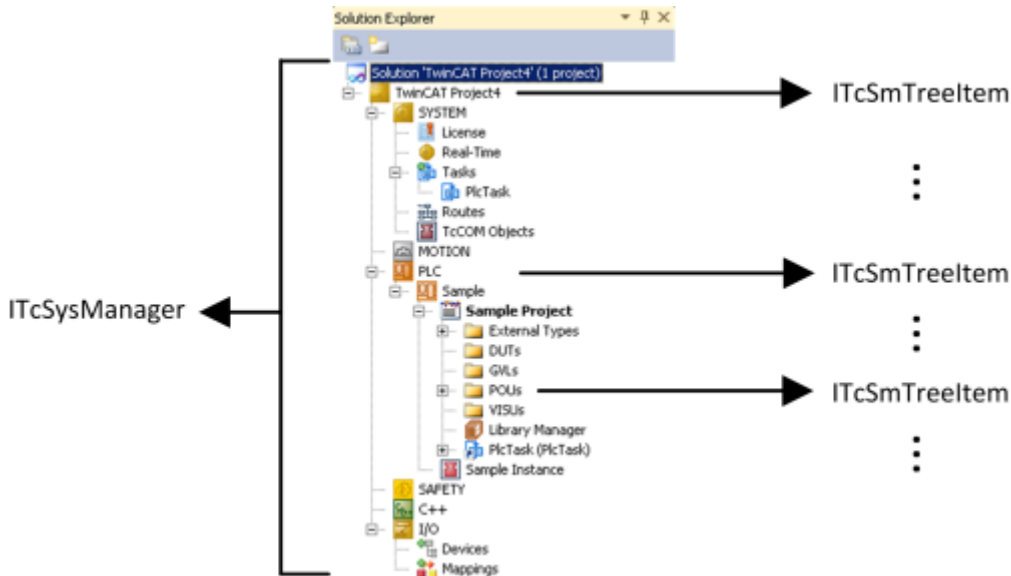
General information

It is important to understand that all information in TwinCAT is ordered in a tree-like structure. In Automation Interface, every tree node, and therefore every element of a TwinCAT configuration, is represented by the interface [ITcSmTreeltem \[► 124\]](#).

Navigating the TwinCAT data model can be done in different ways, depending on the sort of information that should be retrieved.

- **Lookup-Methods** are searching for specific tree items via specified search criterias, e.g. the path to a tree item
- **Iterators** or browsing functions iterate over a set of retrieved tree items

Both methods are now being discussed in the following article.



LookupMethods

The Lookup methods are always working on the whole data model (unfiltered).

- `ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem` [▶ 122] determines a tree item with the specified absolute path name.
- `ITcSysManager3::LookupTreeItemById` [▶ 123] determines a tree item with the specified item type and item Id.
- `ITcSmTreeItem::LookupChild` [▶ 163] determines a tree item within a subtree specified by a relative path name.

Each tree item in TwinCAT can be identified by its unique pathname. The pathname of a tree item is based on the hierarchical order of its parent item (its name) and its own name, separated by circumflex accents (^). To shorten the pathnames and to avoid language dependencies, the top level tree items have special abbreviations which are listed in `ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem` [▶ 122].

Iterators

At the moment, three different types of iteration functions are supported:

- Browsing all tree items (unfiltered)
- Browsing main tree items
- Browsing variables / symbols only

Browsing all tree items (unfiltered)

To browse all tree items in an unfiltered way, the property `ITcSmTreeItem` [▶ 124]:`NewEnum` may be used. `_NewEnum` iterates over all subnodes of the currently referenced `ITcSmTreeItem` [▶ 124]. This (COM-) property is used by many Programming and Script languages that support the COM Enumerator model (e.g. .NET languages, VB6 or script languages) by a 'foreach' statement. For non-supporting languages like C++ the foreach loop must be implemented manually by using the `IEnumVariant`-interface.

We recommend to use this way to iterate through child nodes.

Sample (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem parent = sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device1^EK1100");
foreach(ITcSmTreeItem child in parent)
{
    Console.WriteLine(child.Name);
}
```


Sample (C++):

```

...
#import "C:\TwinCAT3\Components\Base\TCatSysManager.tlb" // imports the System Manager / XAE Base
type library
// uses automatically created auto-pointer (see MSDN documentation of #import command)
...

void CSysManDialog::IterateCollection(TCatSysManagerLib::ITcSmTreeItemPtr parentPtr)
{
    IEnumVARIANTPtr spEnum = parentPtr->_NewEnum;
    ULONG nReturned = 0;
    VARIANT variant[1] = {0};
    HRESULT hr = E_UNEXPECTED;

    do
    {
        hr = spEnum->Next(1, &variant[0], &nReturned);
        if(FAILED(hr))
            break;
        for(ULONG i = 0; i < nReturned; ++i)
        {
            IDispatchPtr dispatchPtr;
            IDispatch* pDispatch;
            TCatSysManagerLib::ITcSmTreeItemPtr childPtr;
            HRESULT hr;
            if(variant[0].vt == VT_DISPATCH)
            {
                TCatSysManagerLib::ITcSmTreeItem* pChild = 0;
                dispatchPtr.Attach((variant[0].pdispVal));
                hr = dispatchPtr.QueryInterface(__uuidof(TCatSysManagerLib::ITcSmTreeItem),
reinterpret_cast(&pChild));
                childPtr.Attach(pChild);
                _bstr_t strName = pChild->GetName();
            }
        }
    }
    while(hr != S_FALSE); // S_FALSE zeigt Ende der Sammlung an
}

```

Sample (PowerShell):

```

$systemItem = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC")
foreach($child in $systemItem)
{
write-host$child.Name
}

```

Browsing Main Tree Items (Filtered)

For browsing only the main childs of the current tree item use the [ITcSmTreeItem::ChildCount](#) [► 124] and [ITcSmTreeItem::Child\(n\)](#) [► 116] pair of properties. These methods only work on the direct childs (non-recursive).

Browsing Variables / Symbols only

To Browse the Variables / Symbols use the [ITcSmTreeItem::VarCount\(x\)](#) [► 124] , [ITcSmTreeItem::Var\(x,n\)](#) [► 124] pair of properties. A selection of the variable type (input variables or output variables) can be done by parameter.

4.2.3 Custom TreeItem Parameters

The [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124] interface is supported by every TwinCAT tree item and has a very generic character. To support the specification of all the devices, boxes and terminals, together with many other different types of tree items, all custom parameters of a tree item are accessible via the XML representation of the tree item. This XML-String can be accessed by the method [ITcSmTreeItem::ProduceXml](#) [► 158] and its counterpart [ITcSmTreeItem::ConsumeXml](#) [► 159]. This function pair has the same functionality as the "Export XML Description ..." and "Import XML Description ..." commands from the main menu of the TwinCAT IDE (see snapshot below).

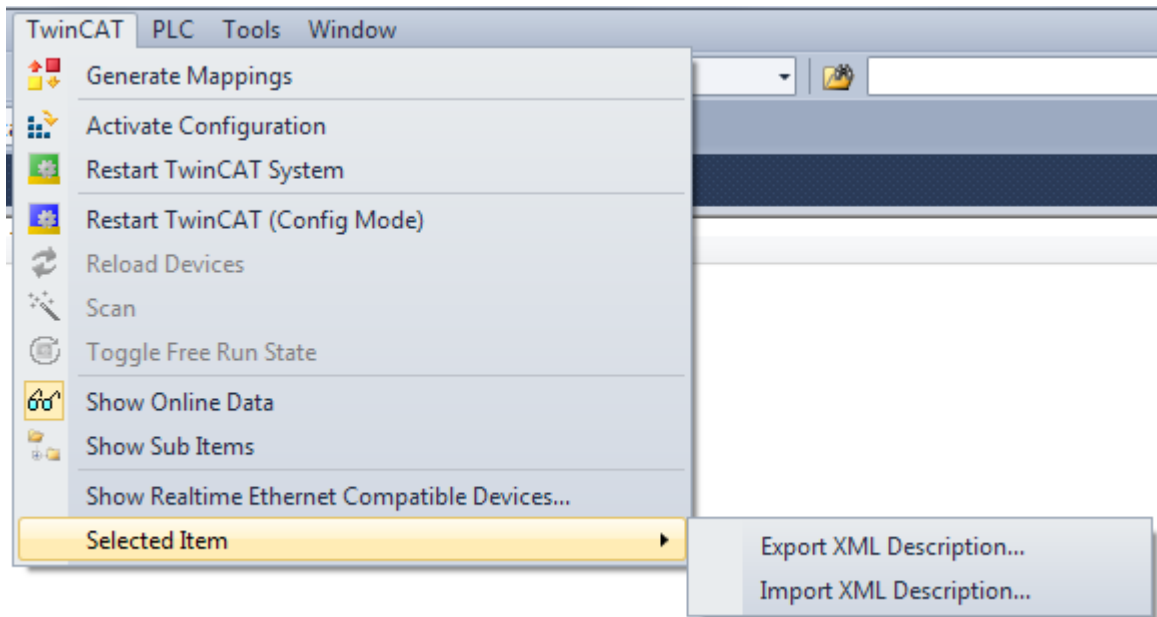


Fig. 1: TcSysMan_AutomationXmlParameters

With this Import/Export function set, many parts of a script or automation code can be tested and tailored conveniently, before it is developed within the coding language - simply by the process of exporting tree item data, changing its content and re-importing it.

Best practice is to export the XML content first, change its content, importing it within the IDE and then, if everything goes successfully, package it into the programming/script code for handling it via the methods ProduceXml and ConsumeXml.

4.2.4 TwinCAT Project Template

When creating a new TwinCAT solution, you need to specify the path to the TwinCAT Project template - see also our article about [Accessing TwinCAT XAE configuration \[▶ 20\]](#).

Basics

TwinCAT version	Path to TwinCAT project template*
TwinCAT 3.0	C:\TwinCAT\3.0\Components\Base\PrjTemplate\TwinCAT Project.tsp
TwinCAT 3.1	C:\TwinCAT\3.1\Components\Base\PrjTemplate\TwinCAT Project.tsproj

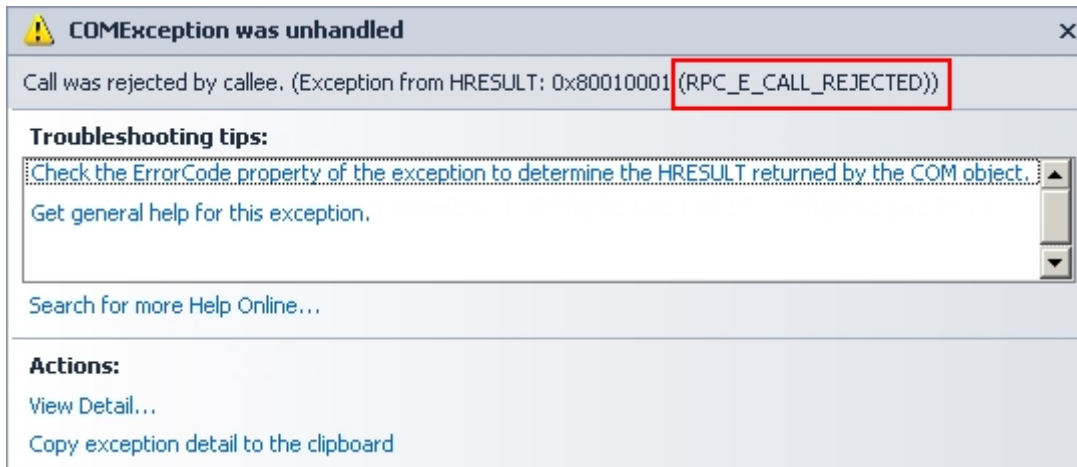
* Please note: The paths mentioned above are based on the default TwinCAT installation directory and may be different if you installed TwinCAT in another folder.

4.2.5 Implementing a COM Message Filter

Message filtering is a mechanism that allows server applications to decide if and when an incoming method call can be safely executed on one of their objects. COM generally does not know the reentrancy requirements of your application and consequently does not filter messages by default. Even though message filtering is not as significant as it was with 16-bit applications because the message queue size is now actually unlimited, you should still implement **message filtering** as a way to resolve blockages. COM will call your implementation of the **IMessageFilter** interface to find out if an application (a COM server) is blocking so that you can respond and handle the situation. For example, when accessing TwinCAT XAE via COM, the Visual Studio instance will reject further COM calls while still executing a previous COM call. As a

result, the client application will issue an `RPC_E_CALL_REJECTED` error and, without further intervention, will not repeat the call. By writing a user-defined message filter, the programmer has the ability to retry the COM call when the client application receives notification of a denied COM call from the COM server.

The following screenshot shows a typical error output by the Visual Studio COM server when an instance is still busy executing a previous COM call.



To avoid this situation and implement a message filter that responds to this rejected COM call, the application engineer must implement the **IMessageFilter** interface. This interface consists of three methods:

- **HandleIncomingCall():** Provides a single entry point for incoming calls
- **MessagePending():** Indicates that a message has been received while COM is waiting for a remote call to be answered.
- **RetryRejectedCall():** Provides the ability to respond to a rejected COM call.

Note that message filters can only be applied to STA threads and that only one filter can be applied to each thread. Multithreaded apartments, e.g. console applications, cannot have message filters. These applications must run in an STA thread to apply message filtering. See the appendix of this documentation for more information on COM threading.

The following code snippet shows a sample of how the `IMessageFilter` interface can be used in C#. Note that this code is also used in many samples in our [Samples](#) [▶ 182] section, and is also available as a separate sample download.

```
[ComImport(), Guid("00000016-0000-0000-C000-000000000046"),
InterfaceTypeAttribute(ComInterfaceType.InterfaceIsIUnknown)]
interface IOleMessageFilter
{
    [PreserveSig]
    int HandleIncomingCall(int dwCallType, IntPtr hTaskCaller, int dwTickCount, IntPtr lpInterfaceInfo);

    [PreserveSig]
    int RetryRejectedCall(IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwRejectType);

    [PreserveSig]
    int MessagePending(IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwPendingType);
}
```

The following class implements this interface and adds two more methods: `Register()` and `Revoke()`.

```
public class MessageFilter : IOleMessageFilter
{
    public static void Register()
    {
        IOleMessageFilter newFilter = new MessageFilter();
        IOleMessageFilter oldFilter = null;
        int test = CoRegisterMessageFilter(newFilter, out oldFilter);

        if (test != 0)
        {

```

```

Console.WriteLine(string.Format("CoRegisterMessageFilter failed with error : {0}", test));
}
}

public static void Revoke()
{
    IOleMessageFilter oldFilter = null;
    int test = CoRegisterMessageFilter(null, out oldFilter);
}

int IOleMessageFilter.HandleInComingCall(int dwCallType, System.IntPtr hTaskCaller, int dwTickCount,
System.IntPtr lpInterfaceInfo)
{
    //returns the flag SERVERCALL_ISHANDLED.
    return 0;
}

int IOleMessageFilter.RetryRejectedCall(System.IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int
dwRejectType)
{
    // Thread call was refused, try again.
    if (dwRejectType == 2)
        // flag = SERVERCALL_RETRYLATER.
        {
            // retry thread call at once, if return value >=0 &
            // <100.
            return 99;
        }
    return -1;
}

int IOleMessageFilter.MessagePending(System.IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwPendingType)
{
    //return flag PENDINGMSG_WAITDEFPROCESS.
    return 2;
}

// implement IOleMessageFilter interface.
[DllImport("Ole32.dll")]
private static extern int CoRegisterMessageFilter(IOleMessageFilter newFilter, outIOleMessageFilter
oldFilter);

```

An application engineer now only needs to call the Register() and Revoke() methods from another class to initialize and discard the MessageFilter. The result is that rejected COM calls are repeated as specified in the RetryRejectedCall() method.

The following code snippet shows how to call these methods in a console application written in C#. As mentioned above, console applications run in an MTA thread by default. For this reason, the Main() method must be configured to run in an STA apartment so that the message filter can be applied.

```

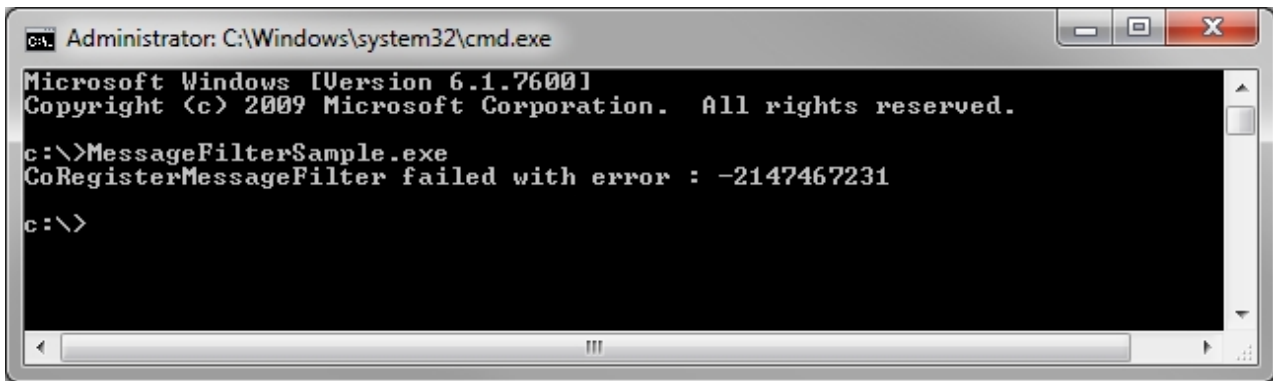
[STAThread]
static void Main(string[] args)
{
    MessageFilter.Register();

    /* =====
    * place COM calls for the Automation Interface here
    * ...
    * ...
    * ===== */

    MessageFilter.Revoke();
}

```

If you try to apply a message filter to an application running in the MTA apartment, the following error is issued when trying to execute the CoRegisterMessageFilter() method during runtime:



```

Administrator: C:\Windows\system32\cmd.exe
Microsoft Windows [Version 6.1.7600]
Copyright (c) 2009 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

c:\>MessageFilterSample.exe
CoRegisterMessageFilter failed with error : -2147467231

c:\>

```

For more information about the different COM threading models, see the MSDN article [Understanding and Using COM Threading models](#). For more detailed information about the IMessageFilter interface, see the MSDN documentation regarding [IMessageFilter](#).

The following code snippet shows how to implement a COM MessageFilter for Windows Powershell by [including](#) it as a .NET type (C#) in PowerShell.

Code snippet (Powershell):

```

AddMessageFilterClass('') # Call function
[EnvDteUtils.MessageFilter]::Register() # Call static Register Filter Method

$dte = New-Object -COMObject TcXaeShell.DTE.15.0
$dte.SuppressUI = $false
$dte.MainWindow.Visible = $true
$solution = $dte.Solution
# do stuff
$dte.Quit()

[EnvDTEUtils.MessageFilter]::Revoke()

function AddMessageFilterClass
{
    $source = @'
namespace EnvDteUtils
{
    using System;
    using System.Runtime.InteropServices;

    public class MessageFilter : IOleMessageFilter
    {
        public static void Register()
        {
            IOleMessageFilter newFilter = new MessageFilter();
            IOleMessageFilter oldFilter = null;
            CoRegisterMessageFilter(newFilter, out oldFilter);
        }

        public static void Revoke()
        {
            IOleMessageFilter oldFilter = null;
            CoRegisterMessageFilter(null, out oldFilter);
        }

        int IOleMessageFilter.HandleInComingCall(int dwCallType, System.IntPtr hTaskCaller, int dwTickCount,
        System.IntPtr lpInterfaceInfo)
        {
            return 0;
        }

        int IOleMessageFilter.RetryRejectedCall(System.IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int
        dwRejectType)
        {
            if (dwRejectType == 2)
            {
                return 99;
            }
            return -1;
        }
    }
'
}

```

```

int IOleMessageFilter.MessagePending(System.IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwPendingType)
{
return 2;
}

[DllImport("Ole32.dll")]
private static extern int CoRegisterMessageFilter(IOleMessageFilter newFilter, out IOleMessageFilter
oldFilter);
}

[ComImport(), Guid("00000016-0000-0000-C000-000000000046"),
InterfaceTypeAttribute(ComInterfaceType.InterfaceIsIUnknown)]
interface IOleMessageFilter
{
[PreserveSig]
int HandleInComingCall(int dwCallType, IntPtr hTaskCaller, int dwTickCount, IntPtr lpInterfaceInfo);

[PreserveSig]
int RetryRejectedCall(IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwRejectType);

[PreserveSig]
int MessagePending(IntPtr hTaskCallee, int dwTickCount, int dwPendingType);
}
}
'@
Add-Type -TypeDefinition $source
}

```

4.2.6 Handling different Visual Studio versions

This article explains how to use the TwinCAT Automation Interface with different versions of Visual Studio, e.g. Visual Studio 2010 and 2012, in case you have installed two or more versions in parallel. It consists of the following topics:

- Visual Studio Program ID
- Specify Visual Studio version in Automation Interface code

Visual Studio Program ID

As you have already seen in our basic articles, you need to create a Visual Studio DTE object before implementing Automation Interface code because of the TwinCAT 3 integration into the Visual Studio environment. If you have installed more than one Visual Studio version on your Engineering PC and would like to choose which version should be used along with the Automation Interface code, you need to determine the so-called Program ID (ProgID) of the corresponding Visual Studio version. The ProgID is located in the Windows Registry under HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT and has the following format: VisualStudio.DTE.X.Y.

The following table shows the ProgIDs for the currently supported versions of Visual Studio:

Version	ProgID
Visual Studio 2010	VisualStudio.DTE.10.0
Visual Studio 2012	VisualStudio.DTE.11.0
Visual Studio 2013	VisualStudio.DTE.12.0
Visual Studio 2015	VisualStudio.DTE.14.0
Visual Studio 2017	VisualStudio.DTE.15.0
TwinCAT XAE Shell	TcXaeShell.DTE.15.0

Specify Visual Studio version in Automation Interface code

To specify the Visual Studio version in Automation Interface code, you need to use the ProgID as a parameter of the GetTypeFromProgID() method during the creation process of the DTE object.

Code Snippet (C#):

```

Type t = System.Type.GetTypeFromProgID("VisualStudio.DTE.15.0");
EnvDTE.DTE dte = (EnvDTE.DTE)System.Activator.CreateInstance(t);

```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$dte = new-object -com VisualStudio.DTE.15.0
```

4.2.7 Silent Mode

Sometimes an Automation Interface script or program should operate silently, which means without any message boxes or other visible interruptions. Although the Visual Studio DTE command “dte.Visible = true/false” may seem sufficient in most use cases, the TwinCAT Automation Interface introduces a new Silent Mode switch, which is available since TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4020.0 and above.

This new switch can be activated as follows.

Code snippet (C#):

```
var settings = dte.GetObject("TcAutomationSettings");  
settings.SilentMode = true;
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$settings = $dte.GetObject("TcAutomationSettings")  
$settings.SilentMode = $true
```

This will suppress message box dialogs during usage of the TwinCAT Automation Interface.

4.3 Best practice

4.3.1 Visual Studio

4.3.1.1 Select projects for build process

The Visual Studio API provides all mechanisms required to select projects for a Solution Configuration. The necessary methods are part of the SolutionBuild2 class of the EnvDTE namespace. The following example demonstrates how to use the method BuildProject() from that class.

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$sln = $dte.Solution  
$prj = $dte.Projects.Item(1) #SysMan Project  
$sysManProjectName = $prj.FullName  
$plcPrjProjectName = PathToPlcProjFile  
$sln.SolutionBuild.BuildProject("Release|TwinCAT RT (x64)", $sysManProjectName, $true)  
$sln.SolutionBuild.BuildProject("Release|TwinCAT RT (x64)", $plcPrjProjectName, $true)
```

The placeholder “pathToPlcProjFile” represents the full path to a *.plcproj file which represents a TwinCAT 3 PLC project.

4.3.1.2 Accessing TeamFoundationServer source control

This chapter provides an overview about how to access a Microsoft Team Foundation Server (TFS) programmatically by using the corresponding DLLs that are supplied by Visual Studio. This documentation has been written for your convenience and to make first steps easier when trying to combine TwinCAT Automation Interface code with TFS DLLs. For a more detailed documentation about the TFS API, we highly recommend to visit the corresponding MSDN articles.

This documentation covers the following topics:

- Connecting to a TFS Server
- Connecting to TeamProjects
- Working with workspaces
- Creating working folders

- Get latest version of an item
- Getting a list of pending changes
- Checking In and Checking Out
- Undo an operation

The following TFS API DLLs are being used within this documentation:

- Microsoft.TeamFoundation.Client
- Microsoft.TeamFoundation.VersionControl.Client

Connecting to a TFS Server

The Microsoft TFS API lets you connect your application containing TwinCAT Automation Interface code to your development repository on a remote server. The connection requires a string describing the address, the port and the collection of your remote server e.g. `http://your-tfs:8080/tfs/DefaultCollection`.

Before you connect, define an instance of Uri class and TfsConfigurationServer class. Assign the remote server link to the configuration server:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
string tfsServerUrl = "http://your-server:8080/tfs/DefaultCollection";
Uri configurationServerUri = new Uri(tfsServerUrl);
TfsTeamProjectCollection teamProjects =
TfsTeamProjectCollectionFactory.GetTeamProjectCollection(configurationServerUri);
VersionControlServer verControlServer = teamProjects.GetService<VersionControlServer>();
```

Connecting to TeamProjects

You can get a list of team projects or a specific team project on the server by executing the following code snippets:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
// Get all Team projects
TeamProject[] allProjects = verControlServer.GetAllTeamProjects(true);

// Get specific Team Project
TeamProject project = verControlServer.TryGetTeamProject("TeamProjectName");
```

Working with workspaces

Team foundation deals with workspaces which comprises mappings to working folders. These mappings link server-side folders to local folders on your hard-drive. It additionally also stores the name of the owner and the name of your computer as a part of the workspace name. A workspace is a must before performing any version control task because it stores information about files, versions and list of pending changes.

To begin with TFS Client API offers a *Workspace* class which stores the information mentioned above and offers extensive suit of methods to interact with the files and folders. Suppose you wish to create a workspace for a folder named, *folderName*, then create a string containing the computer name and the folder:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
// Specify workspace name for later use
String workspaceName = String.Format("{0}-{1}", Environment.MachineName, "Test_TFSAPI");

// Create new workspace
Workspace newWorkspace = verControlServer.CreateWorkspace(workspaceName,
verControlServer.AuthorizedUser);
```

A mapping can now exist between the server-side folder and your local folder specified by *folderName* under *workspace*. To get an existing or delete a workspace, simply execute the following methods:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
// Delete workspace
bool workspaceDeleted = verControlServer.DeleteWorkspace(workspaceName,
verControlServer.AuthorizedUser);
```



```
// Get existing workspace
Workspace existingWorkspace = verControlServer.GetWorkspace(workspaceName,
verControlServer.AuthorizedUser);
```

Creating working folders

To connect to a specified project folder, you need a path to the project relative to the root.

For instance, if the project is stored on: *your-server\Development\TcSampleProjectX*, then the relative path to that folder is *\$/Development\TcSampleProjectX*.

To match this folder to the projects on the server, you can iterate over a set of all registered projects on the server. A registered project is the root of project collections found underneath.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
// Create mapping between server and local folder
string serverFolder = String.Format("${/0}", teamProject.Name + "/Folder/SubFolder");
string localFolder = Path.Combine(@"C:\tfs", workspaceName);
WorkingFolder workingFolder = new WorkingFolder(serverFolder, localFolder);
existingWorkspace.CreateMapping(workingFolder);
```

Get latest version of an item

As mentioned earlier `Workspace` class offers a rich set of methods to execute the TFS commands from within the code. But before illustrating, here is an example of creating a link to an item in the working folder.

To create a relative path:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
String existingItemPath = "$/Development/TcSampleProject/Examples/Samples00/TestPlc/POUs/
MAIN.TcPOU";
```

Or an absolute path:

```
String existingItemPath = C:/tfs/Development/TcSampleProject/Examples/TestPlc/POUs/MAIN.TcPOU";
```

To get the latest version of the item in the example, add following line of code:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
String existingItemPath = "$/TeamProjectName/Folder/SubFolder";
GetRequest itemRequest = new GetRequest(new ItemSpec(existingItemPath, RecursionType.Full),
VersionSpec.Latest);
existingWorkspace.Get(itemRequest, GetOptions.GetAll);
```

Here the *RecursionType.Full* executes the request on all the items under the item node but you can select it depending on your application's requirement and existing item hierarchy. For more information please refer to the API documentation on MSDN.

Getting a list of pending changes

You can also get a list of pending changes made to the item or a collection of items with following line of code:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
PendingChange[] pendingChanges = existingWorkspace.GetPendingChanges(existingItemPath,
RecursionType.Full);
```

For collection of items, consider the overloaded variance with `Item[]` as argument.

Checking-In and Checking-Out

You can check out an item or a collection of items for editing:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
int checkoutResult = existingWorkspace.PendEdit(existingItemPath, RecursionType.Full);
```

To check-in the collection of pending changes to an item by:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
int checkinResult = workspace.CheckIn(pendingChanges, usercomment);
```

Undo an operation

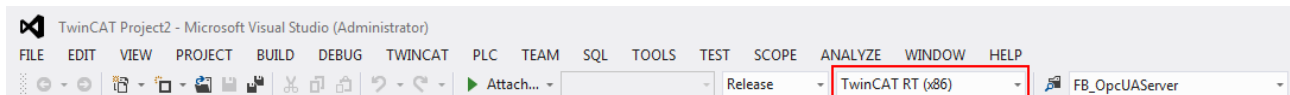
To Undo an operation, simply execute:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
int undoResult = existingWorkspace.Undo(existingItemPath, RecursionType.Full);
```

4.3.1.3 Setting TwinCAT target platform

This article describes how to set the TwinCAT target platform via Automation Interface code. The target platform determines for which target the TwinCAT configuration should be compiled, e.g. TwinCAT x86 or TwinCAT x64, and is usually set from within a TwinCAT XAE toolbar in Visual Studio.



The following code snippet assumes that you already have a DTE instance that links to a TwinCAT configuration. It checks for the currently set target platform and re-sets it to another platform.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSysManager systemManager = pro.Object;
ITcSysManager7 sysManPlatform = (ITcSysManager7) systemManager;
ITcConfigManager configManager = (ITcConfigManager) sysManPlatform.ConfigurationManager;
if (configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform == "TwinCAT RT (x86)")
    configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform = "TwinCAT RT (x64)";
else
    configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform = "TwinCAT RT (x86)";
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$configManager = $systemManager.ConfigurationManager
if ($configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform -eq "TwinCAT RT (x86)") {
    $configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform = "TwinCAT RT
(x64)"} else {$configManager.ActiveTargetPlatform = "TwinCAT RT (x86)"}
}
```

NOTE

Changing target hardware platform or remote target with TwinCAT configuration

This article describes how to change the target hardware platform. If you want to change the actual remote target to which the TwinCAT configuration should be written, please use the `ITcSysManager::SetTarget-NetId()` method.

The following code snippet demonstrates how to acquire access to the Visual Studio Configuration Manager and enable or disable single TwinCAT sub projects (PLC, C++, ...) for the build process. The snippet assumes that the currently opened TwinCAT project is named "TwinCAT Project1" and that it includes a PLC project "Untitled1". It then disables the PLC project for the build process.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
EnvDTE.SolutionContexts solutionContexts =
solution.SolutionBuild.ActiveConfiguration.SolutionContexts;
foreach (EnvDTE.SolutionContext solutionContext in solutionContexts)
{
    switch (solutionContext.ProjectName)
    {
        case "TwinCAT Project13\\Untitled1\\Untitled1.plcproj":
            solutionContext.ShouldBuild = false;
            break;
    }
}
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$solutionContexts = $sln.SolutionBuild.ActiveConfiguration.SolutionContexts
foreach ($solutionContext in $solutionContexts)
{
    if ($solutionContext.ProjectName -eq "TestSolution\\Untitled1\\Untitled1.plcproj")
    {
    }
```

```

    $solutionContext.ShouldBuild = $false
  }
}

```

4.3.1.4 Attaching to an existing Visual Studio instance

The following code snippets demonstrate how to attach to an existing (already running) instance of Visual Studio. The snippets have been written in C#.

The sample consists of three different methods that depend on each other. Of course, you may change this accordingly so that it better fits your application environment. The following table explains each method in more detail.

Method	Description
getRunningObjectTable()	Queries the Running Object Table (ROT) for a snapshot of all running processes in the table. Returns all found processes in a Hashtable, which are then used by <code>getIdeInstances()</code> for further filtering for DTE instances.
getIdeInstances()	Searches for DTE instances in the ROT snapshot and returns a Hashtable with all found instances. This Hashtable may then be used by the method <code>attachToExistingDte()</code> to select single DTE instances. You may change the query for candidateName according to a more specific Visual Studio progId [▶_30], e.g. "VisualStudio.DTE.11.0" to query for Visual Studio 2012 instances.
attachToExistingDte()	Uses the <code>getIdeInstances()</code> method to select a DTE instance based on its solution path and, when found, attaches a new DTE object to this instance.

getRunningObjectTable()

```

public static Hashtable GetRunningObjectTable()
{
    Hashtable result = new Hashtable();
    int numFetched;
    UCOMIRunningObjectTable runningObjectTable;
    UCOMIEnumMoniker monikerEnumerator;
    UCOMIMoniker[] monikers = new UCOMIMoniker[1];
    GetRunningObjectTable(0, out runningObjectTable);
    runningObjectTable.EnumRunning(out monikerEnumerator);
    monikerEnumerator.Reset();
    while (monikerEnumerator.Next(1, monikers, out numFetched) == 0)
    {
        UCOMIBindCtx ctx;
        CreateBindCtx(0, out ctx);
        string runningObjectName;
        monikers[0].GetDisplayName(ctx, null, out runningObjectName);
        object runningObjectVal;
        runningObjectTable.GetObject(monikers[0], out runningObjectVal);
        result[runningObjectName] = runningObjectVal;
    }
    return result;
}

```

Please note that you need to explicitly reference the `CreateBindCtx()` method as a `DllImport` from the `ole32.dll`, e.g.:

```

[DllImport("ole32.dll")]
private static extern int CreateBindCtx(uint reserved, out IBindCtx ppbc);

```

getIdeInstances()

```

public static Hashtable GetIDEInstances(bool openSolutionsOnly, string progId)
{
    Hashtable runningIDEInstances = new Hashtable();
    Hashtable runningObjects = GetRunningObjectTable();
}

```

```

IDictionaryEnumerator rotEnumerator = runningObjects.GetEnumerator();
while (rotEnumerator.MoveNext())
{
    string candidateName = (string)rotEnumerator.Key;
    if (!candidateName.StartsWith("!" + progId))
        continue;
    EnvDTE.DTE ide = rotEnumerator.Value as EnvDTE.DTE;
    if (ide == null)
        continue;
    if (openSolutionsOnly)
    {
        try
        {
            string solutionFile = ide.Solution.FullName;
            if (solutionFile != String.Empty)
                runningIDEInstances[candidateName] = ide;
        }
        catch { }
    }
    else
        runningIDEInstances[candidateName] = ide;
}
return runningIDEInstances;
}

```

attachToExistingDte()

```

public EnvDTE.DTE attachToExistingDte(string solutionPath)
{
    EnvDTE.DTE dte = null;
    Hashtable dteInstances = GetIDEInstances(false, progId);
    IDictionaryEnumerator hashtableEnumerator = dteInstances.GetEnumerator();

    while (hashtableEnumerator.MoveNext())
    {
        EnvDTE.DTE dteTemp = hashtableEnumerator.Value as EnvDTE.DTE;
        if (dteTemp.Solution.FullName == solutionPath)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Found solution in list of all open DTE objects. " + dteTemp.Name); dte = dteTemp;
        }
    }
    return dte;
}

```

4.3.1.5 Accessing window tabs in Visual Studio

The Visual Studio Automation Interface provides methods and properties to access active windows in Visual Studio. The following chapter demonstrates some sample code. However, we also suggest to investigate the webpages of the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN) for more detailed information about the Visual Studio object model. This chapter provides sample code for the following tasks:

- Accessing active windows
- Closing active windows
- Opening windows from TwinCAT PLC configuration

Accessing active windows

The DTE interface provides a property called "ActiveWindow", which returns the currently active window in Visual Studio as an object of type EnvDTE.Window.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
EnvDTE.Window activeWin = dte.ActiveWindow;
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$activeWin = $dte.ActiveWindow
```

Closing active windows

Depending on the customers application, it may be necessary to close all active windows in Visual Studio before proceeding with the TwinCAT configuration via Automation Interface. The following code snippet closes all active windows but the "Solution Explorer".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
try
{
while (!dte.ActiveWindow.Caption.Contains("Solution Explorer"))
dte.ActiveWindow.Close();
}
catch (InvalidOperationException ex)
{
// use DTE.Quit() to close main window
}
```

Opening windows from TwinCAT PLC configuration

It is also possible to open windows from TwinCAT PLC, e.g. a visualization. The following code snippet opens an existing TwinCAT visualization from PLC project "Untitled1" and makes it the currently active window.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
string fileName = @"C:\TwinCAT Project1\TwinCAT Project1\Untitled1\VISUs\Visu.TcVIS";
dte.ItemOperations.OpenFile(fileName);
```

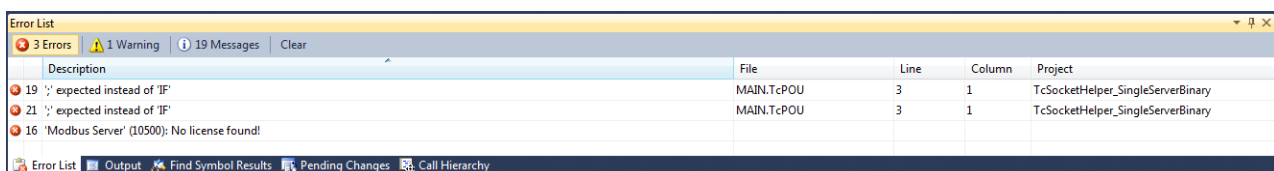
Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$fileName = @"C:\TwinCAT Project1\TwinCAT Project1\Untitled1\VISUs\Visu.TcVIS"
dte.ItemOperations.OpenFile($fileName)
```

4.3.1.6 Accessing the Error List window of Visual Studio

This chapter describes how to get access to the Visual Studio Error List window. Because TwinCAT 3 integrates itself into the Visual Studio shell, reading the content of this window can be essential for debugging and diagnostic purposes. To read the content of this window, you need to access the Visual Studio COM interface. Because this COM interface is also needed to access TwinCAT XAE (e.g. as described in our article [Accessing TwinCAT configuration](#) [▶ 20]), you don't need to add any additional references to your program code.

The following documentation describes how to access the Error List window, which can be very helpful, for example if you want to compile a PLC project and want to check the compile process for any error messages. The Error List window displays status messages for various features in the Visual Studio (and therefore TwinCAT) development environment. These features for example include build errors that occur when a project is compiled or licensing issues.



Reading the content of this window can be essential, e.g. to check if any errors occurred while compiling a PLC project. The following code snippet shows how to read the content of this window using a C# application.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ErrorItems errors = dte.ToolWindows.ErrorList.ErrorItems;
for (int i = 1; i < errors.Count; i++)
{
    ErrorItem item = errors.Item(i);
}
```

Please note that the property "ToolWindows" is available in namespace EnvDTE80.DTE2.

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$errors = $dte.ToolWindows.ErrorList.ErrorItems
for ($i=1; $i -lt $errors.Count; $i++)
{
    $item = $errors.Item($i);
}
```

As you can see, the property ErrorItems returns a collection of all items in the Error List, where each item is of type ErrorItem. You can iterate through this collection for example by making use of its Count property. Each ErrorItem object has the following properties, which are identical to the columns in the ErrorList window (compare to screenshot above):

Property	Description
Description	Describes the error message.
FileName	Filename where the error occurred.
Line	Line in which the error occurred.
Column	Column in which the error occurred.
Project	Project in which the error occurred.

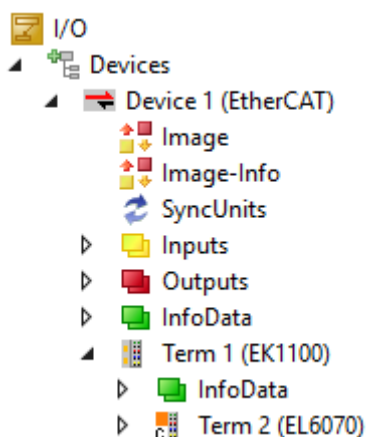
Please note that the last four properties are not always used or don't make sense in every situation. For example, when looking at the screenshot above, the error message "No license found" is not bound to a specific file, line or column because it is a general TwinCAT error message.

4.3.2 Licensing

4.3.2.1 Configuration of licensing hardware

The following article describes how to configure licensing hardware (e.g. an EL6070 terminal). Essentially, this concerns the selection and configuration of the device in the TwinCAT licensing dialogs.

As a requirement for the following steps, the corresponding licensing hardware must be present in the I/O part of the TwinCAT configuration, e.g. in the case of an EL6070:



Finding all existing licensing devices

A check for all existing licensing hardware can be performed by exporting the XML description to the "License" node of the TwinCAT configuration.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem license = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC^License");
string xmlDescription = license.ProduceXml();
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$license = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC^License");
$xmlDescription = $license.ProduceXml();
```

The XML description lists the available licensing hardware, for example:

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>License</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRC^License</PathName>
  <ItemType>59</ItemType>
  <LicenseDef>
    <AvailableLicenseDevices>
      <LicenseDevice>
        <Name>Term 2 (EL6070)</Name>
        <PathName>TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 2 (EL6070)</PathName>
        <TypeName>EL6070 1Ch. Licensing-Terminal</TypeName>
        <ObjectID>50462722</ObjectID>
      </LicenseDevice>
    </AvailableLicenseDevices>
    <Commands>
      <ActivateResponseFile/>
    </Commands>
  </LicenseDef>
</TreeItem>
```

Selecting a licensing device

To add licensing hardware to the TwinCAT license configuration, either the device name or its ObjectID can be used. The former is well-suited if the device name is known, e.g. if the I/O device was generated in advance. The latter can be determined from the XML description above.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ItcSmTreeItem el6070dev1 = license.CreateChild("NameOfDevice", 0, null, "Term 2 (EL6070)"); // DeviceName
ItcSmTreeItem el6070dev2 = license.CreateChild("NameOfDevice", 0, null, "50462722"); // ObjectID
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$el6070dev1 = $license.CreateChild("NameOfDevice", 0, $null, "Term 2 (EL6070)"); // DeviceName
$el6070dev2 = $license.CreateChild("NameOfDevice", 0, $null, "50462722"); // ObjectID
```

System requirements

Required TwinCAT version

TwinCAT v3.1.4022.4

4.3.2.2 Activating license response files

The following article describes how license response files can be loaded via the TwinCAT Automation Interface. This function is provided via the XML description of the "License" node.

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>License</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRC^License</PathName>
  <ItemType>59</ItemType>
  <LicenseDef>
    <Commands>
      <ActivateResponseFile>
        <Path>...</Path>
        <OemGuid>...</OemGuid>
      </ActivateResponseFile>
    </Commands>
  </LicenseDef>
</TreeItem>
```

The <Path> to the license response file can be specified in the XML area <ActivateResponseFile>. This XML document can then be loaded via a ConsumeXml() to the "License" node in order to activate the license response file. The parameter <OemGuid> is only required in special cases and can be given any value, e.g. 0.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem license = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC^License");
license.ConsumeXml(xmlDescriptionFromAbove);
```

System requirements

Required TwinCAT version

TwinCAT v3.1.4022.4

4.3.3 System

4.3.3.1 Opening and activating existing configurations

To activate a previously created configuration, an instance of the TwinCAT XAE has to be created, the configuration has to be loaded and activated.

Procedure

The ProgId **"VisualStudio.DTE.10.0"** is used to create an instance of Visual Studio. Via Visual Studios DTE object a full control of Visual Studio is possible. The Procedure to create the [ITcSysManager \[116\]](#) interface (the 'sysMan' instance here) is described in the chapter [Accessing TwinCAT Configurations. \[20\]](#)

Sample (CSharp):

Please note, that, for this sample, you need to add both a reference to "Microsoft Developer Environment 10.0" and "Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base" to your project.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using System.Text;
using EnvDTE100;
using System.IO;
using TcSysManagerLib;

namespace ActivatePreviousConfiguration
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            Type t = System.Type.GetTypeFromProgID("VisualStudio.DTE.10.0");
            EnvDTE.DTE dte = (EnvDTE.DTE)System.Activator.CreateInstance(t);
            dte.SuppressUI = false;
            dte.MainWindow.Visible = true;

            EnvDTE.Solution sol = dte.Solution;
            sol.Open(@"C:\Temp\SolutionFolder\MySolution1\MySolution1.sln");

            EnvDTE.Project pro = sol.Projects.Item(1);

            ITcSysManager sysMan = pro.Object;

            sysMan.ActivateConfiguration();
            sysMan.StartRestartTwinCAT();
        }
    }
}
```

Sample (PowerShell):

```
$prjDir = "C:\tmp\TestSolution\"
$prjName = "TestSolution.sln"
$prjPath = $prjDir += $prjName
$dte = new-object -com VisualStudio.DTE.10.0
$dte.SuppressUI = $false
$dte.MainWindow | %{$_.gettype().InvokeMember("Visible","SetProperty",$null,$_, $true)}

$sln = $dte.Solution
$sln.Open($prjPath)
```



```
$project = $sln.Projects.Item(1)
$systemManager = $project.Object

$systemManager.ActivateConfiguration()
$systemManager.StartRestartTwinCAT()
```

Sample (VBScript):

```
dim dte,sln,proj,sysMan
set dte = CreateObject("VisualStudio.DTE.10.0")
set sln = dte.Solution
call sln.Open("C:\SolutionFolder\MySolution1.sln")
set proj = sln.Projects(1)
set sysMan = proj.Object
call sysMan.ActivateConfiguration
call sysMan.StartRestartTwinCAT
```

4.3.3.2 Opening existing projects from a TwinCAT Target

This documentation article describes how to open existing TwinCAT projects from a connected TwinCAT Target. The Target needs to be available, which means that ADS routes have to be present in order to be able to retrieve the project from the Target.

The following code snippet demonstrates how to retrieve the TwinCAT project from a connected Target Runtime.

Code snippet (C#):

```
dte.ExecuteCommand("File.OpenProjectFromTarget", "CX-123456 C:\\ProjectDir ProjectName");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$dte.ExecuteCommand("File.OpenProjectFromTarget", "CX-123456 C:\\ProjectDir ProjectName");
```

The method `ExecuteCommand()` from the Visual Studio API allows to trigger the TwinCAT command (`File.OpenProjectFromTarget`) to open the project from a connected TwinCAT Target. The three parameters are to be included in the second parameter of the `ExecuteCommand()` method. These three parameters are: Route name to Target, local project directory (where the project files should be stored), local project name. All three parameters are to be separated with a space from each other.

4.3.3.3 Creating and handling variable mappings

A very common scenario in which the TwinCAT Automation Interface is being used, is to automatically create variable mappings, e.g. between PLC input/output variables and their corresponding I/O counterparts. The Automation Interface provides several methods that simplify the task to create, delete or save variable mappings. The following documentation article briefly describes these methods and gives examples on how to use them. The following topics are covered:

- General information
- Link variables
- Unlink variables
- Get/Set all variable mappings
- Delete all variable mappings

General information

Variable mappings may occur between different input/output tree items in a TwinCAT project, for example:

- Between PLC input/output variables and I/O (and vice versa)
- Between PLC input/output variables and NC (and vice versa)
- Between PLC input/output variables and TcCOM objects (and vice versa)
- ...

The information in this article describes Automation Interface mechanisms which may be used for all of these use cases.

Link variables

From an Automation Interface point-of-view, variable mappings are always being performed between two tree items, e.g. between a PLC input/output variable and its corresponding I/O counterpart. To link two tree items, the Automation Interface provides the method `ITcSysManager::LinkVariables()` which links a given source tree item with a given destination tree item.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string source = "TIPC^PlcProj^PlcProj Instance^PlcTask Inputs^bIn";
string destination = "TIID^EtherCAT^EK1100^EL1004^Channel 1^Input";
systemManager.LinkVariables(source, destination);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$source = "TIPC^PlcProj^PlcProj Instance^PlcTask Inputs^bIn"
$destination = "TIID^EtherCAT^EK1100^EL1004^Channel 1^Input"
$systemManager.LinkVariables($source, $destination)
```

Unlink variables

Similar to linking variables, the Automation Interface provides a method `ITcSysManager::UnlinkVariables()` which releases the link between a given source tree item and a given destination tree item.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string source = "TIPC^PlcProj^PlcProj Instance^PlcTask Inputs^bIn";
string destination = "TIID^EtherCAT^EK1100^EL1004^Channel 1^Input";
systemManager.UnlinkVariables(source, destination);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$source = "TIPC^PlcProj^PlcProj Instance^PlcTask Inputs^bIn"
$destination = "TIID^EtherCAT^EK1100^EL1004^Channel 1^Input"
$systemManager.UnlinkVariables($source, $destination)
```

Save/Restore all variable mappings

To save or restore all variable mappings in a TwinCAT project, the methods `ITcSysManager2::ProduceMappingInfo()` and `ITcSysManager2::ConsumeMappingInfo()` can be used. The former reads all variable mappings in a TwinCAT project and returns them in an XML structure that can be re-imported later by using the latter method.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSysManager2 systemManager2 = (ITcSysManager2)systemManager;
string mappingInfo = systemManager2.ProduceMappingInfo();
systemManager2.ConsumeMappingInfo(mappingInfo);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$mappingInfo = $systemManager.ProduceMappingInfo()
$systemManager.ConsumeMappingInfo($mappingInfo)
```

Delete all variable mappings

To delete all variable mappings in a TwinCAT project, the method `ITcSysManager3.ClearMappingInfo()` may be used.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSysManager3 systemManager = (ITcSysManager3)systemManager;
systemManager.ClearMappingInfo();
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$systemManager.ClearMappingInfo()
```

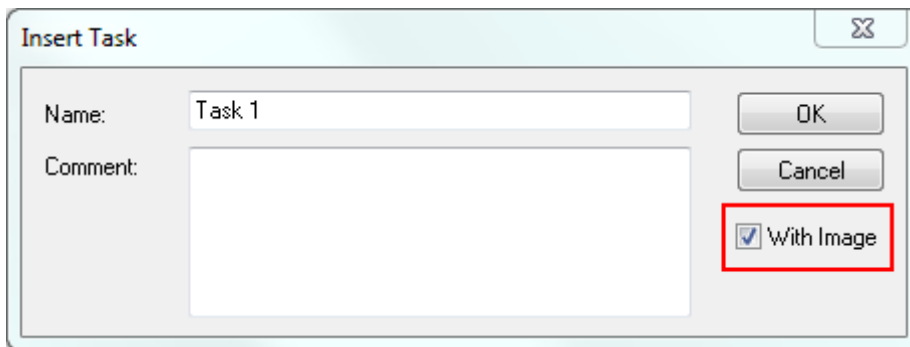
4.3.3.4 Creating and handling Tasks

This article explains how to create and handle Tasks via TwinCAT Automation Interface. It consists of the following topics:

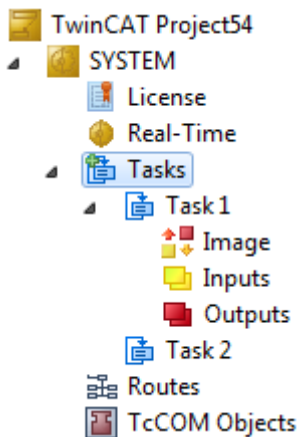
- General information
- Inserting Tasks
- Inserting input/output variables

General information

There are two types of Tasks which can be configured in TwinCAT XAE and therefore also via Automation Interface: Tasks with Process Image and without. When you insert a new Task in TwinCAT XAE, you can decide whether you want to include a Process Image or not by selecting the corresponding checkbox in the "Insert Task" dialog.



As a result, the inserted Task either includes three more child nodes (Image, Inputs, Outputs) or not - as the following example shows (Task 1 = With Image, Task 2 = Without Image).



Inserting Tasks

To insert a Task via Automation Interface, you can make use of the `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::CreateChild() [▶ 160]` method and the corresponding SubTypes for "With Image" (SubType = 0) and "Without Image" (SubType = 1).

Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem tasks = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT");
tasks.CreateChild("Task 1 (With Image)", 0, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tasks = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT")
$tasks.CreateChild("Task 1 (With Image)", 0, $null, $null)
```

Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem tasks = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT");
tasks.CreateChild("Task 2 (Without Image)", 1, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tasks = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT")
$tasks.CreateChild("Task 1 (Without Image)", 1, $null, $null)
```

Inserting input/output variables

You can add Input/Output variables to process images (Task "With Image"), which can then be linked with I/O devices or variables from other Tasks. The corresponding dialog from TwinCAT XAE lets you choose e.g. the data type and address of the input/output variable in the process image. By clicking on "Ok", the variable will be added to the process image.

Data Type	>Size	Name Space
ARRAY [0..0] OF BIT	0.1	
BIT	0.1	
ARRAY [0..0] OF BYTE	1	
BIT8	1	
BOOL	1	
BYTE	1	
SINT	1	
USINT	1	
ARRAY [0..1] OF BYTE	2	
DPV2_TIMESTAMPSTATUS	2	IO

This procedure can also be triggered via Automation Interface by using the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::CreateChild\(\)](#) [\[▶ 160\]](#) method with the corresponding variable data type as vInfo. In this case the SubType specifies the "Start Address", as shown in the dialog above.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem task1 = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT^Task 1 (With Image)^Inputs");
task1.CreateChild("bInput", -1, null, "BOOL");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$task1 = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT^Task 1 (With Image)^Inputs")
$task1.CreateChild("bInput", -1, $null, "BOOL")
```

By using SubType = -1, TwinCAT automatically attaches the new variable at the end of the variable list.

4.3.3.5 Using Templates

The following article describes how to use templates instead of configuring every single setting separately via Automation Interface. The usage of templates provides many advantages: they are easier to maintain, easier to replace with new templates, and they provide great possibilities when working with multiple teams on one TwinCAT project. This document describes the usage of templates and covers the following topics:

- The general idea behind templates and its different levels
- Working with I/O templates
- Working with Motion templates (axes)

- Working with PLC templates

The general idea behind templates and its different levels

The idea behind the usage of templates is to simplify Automation Interface code and the Automation Interface application itself. Most users are not aware that, in a TwinCAT configuration, templates can exist on multiple levels. These include:

- Templates on “configuration level”
- Templates on configuration level may exist as several TwinCAT configurations (*.sln or *.tzip file). Each configuration may include different content and can be opened and activated by Automation Interface code.
- Templates on “(PLC) project level”
- Templates on (PLC) project level may exist as several TwinCAT PLC Projects, either as an unpacked folder structure (*.plcproj file) or as a container (*.tzip) file. These PLC Projects can then be imported on demand via Automation Interface code.
- Templates on “tree item level”
- Templates on tree item level may exist as so-called TwinCAT export files (*.xti). These files can be imported on demand via Automation Interface code and contain all settings of a tree item, e.g. settings that have been made to an EtherCAT Master I/O device.

As the description from above might suggest, all different template levels have one thing in common: the templates exist as files in the file system. It is best practice that, at the beginning of implementing an own Automation Interface application, one clearly defines what kind of “template pool” is being used. A template pool describes a repository, where all template files (which might also be a mix of different template levels) are being stored. This could simply be the local (or remote) file system, or might also be a source control system (e.g. Team Foundation Server), from which template files are automatically retrieved, checked out and put together to a new TwinCAT configuration. For your convenience and to make the first steps easier for you, we have prepared a separate documentation article that demonstrates how to use the Visual Studio Object Model (DTE) to connect to a Team Foundation Server (TFS) and execute these operations via program code. However, to get more information about using TFS via Automation Interface code, we heavily suggest to read the corresponding articles from the Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN).

The following topics describe how each template level can be used in Automation Interface for a different TwinCAT area (I/O, PLC, ...).

Working with configuration templates

Templates on configuration level provide the most basic way of using templates. In this scenario, a template pool holds two or more pre-configured TwinCAT configurations and provides them as TwinCAT Solution files (*.sln or *.tzip). These files can be opened via Automation Interface by using the Visual Studio method `AddFromTemplate()`.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
project = solution.AddFromTemplate(@"C:\TwinCAT Project.tzip", destination, projectName);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$project = $solution.AddFromTemplate(@"C:\TwinCAT Project.tzip", $destination, $projectName)
```

OR

Code Snippet (C#):

```
project = solution.Open(@"C:\TwinCAT Project 1.sln");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$project = $solution.Open(@"C:\TwinCAT Project 1.sln")
```

Working with I/O templates

When working with I/O devices, users often experience the same tasks on I/O devices over and over again. That means, making the same settings to I/O devices with each TwinCAT configuration. TwinCAT provides a mechanism that stores all these settings in a special file format, the so-called XTI file (*.xti). This file format can be used by Automation Interface code to be imported to a new configuration by using the method `ImportChild()` which is defined in the interface `ITcSmTreeItem`.

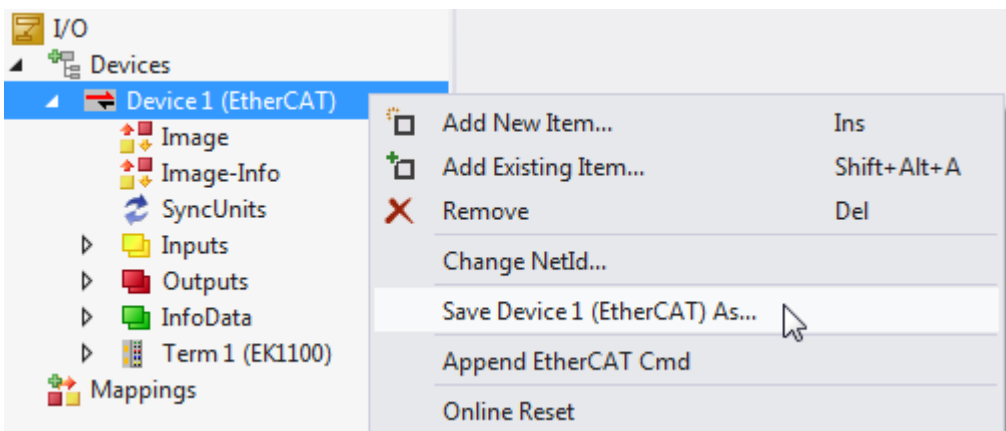
Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem io = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
ITcSmTreeItem newIo = io.ImportChild(@"C:\IoTemplate.xti", "", true, "SomeName");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$io = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$newIo = $io.ImportChild(@"C:\IoTemplate.xti", "", true, "SomeName")
```

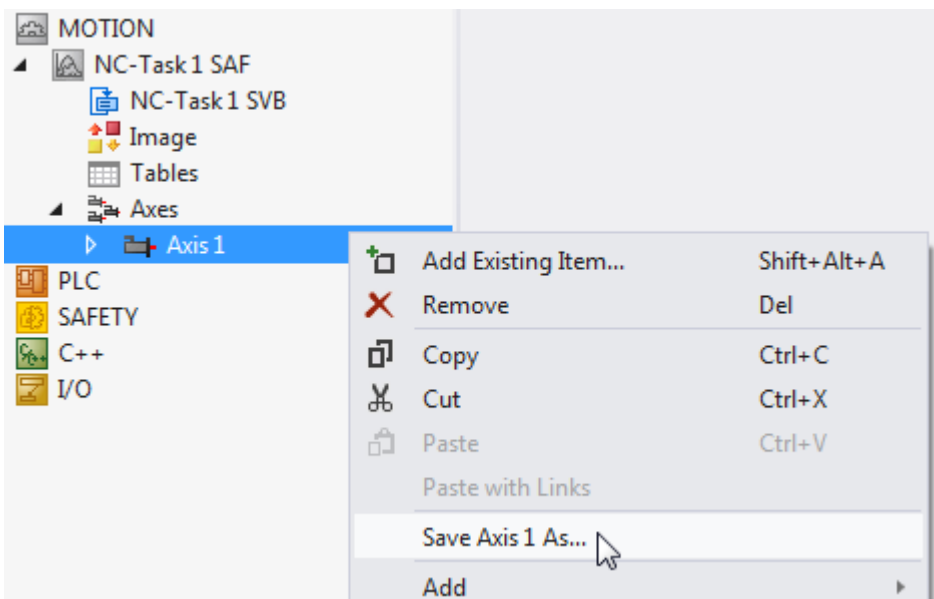
It is important to note that, if you export an I/O device from within TwinCAT XAE, that all sub devices are automatically exported and included in the export file as well. The following screenshot shows how to export I/O devices into an export file.



Please note that you could also use the Automation Interface to export an I/O device into an XTI file. For this, the method `ExportChild()` from the `ITcSmTreeItem` interface is provided.

Working with Motion templates (axes)

The usage of Motion axes templates is very similar to I/O devices. Axes can also be exported into an XTI-file, either via TwinCAT XAE or via Automation Interface code by using `ExportChild()`.



By using `ImportChild()`, these export files can later be imported again.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem motionAxes = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes");
motionAxes.ImportChild(@"C:\AxisTemplates.xti", "", true, "Axis 1");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$motionAxes = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes")
$motionAxes.ImportChild(@"C:\AxisTemplates.xti", "", true, "Axis 1")
```

Working with PLC templates

PLC templates are available in two units: You can either use the complete PLC projects as a whole or each POU individually as a templates. To integrate the former into an existing TwinCAT project, simply use the CreateChild() method of the ITcSmTreeItem interface.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plc = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC");
plc.CreateChild("NewPlcProject", 0, null, pathToTpzipOrTcProjFile);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC")
$plc.CreateChild("NewPlcProject", 0, $null, $pathToTpzipOrTcProjFile)
```

More options to import existing PLC projects can be found in the best practice article about “Accessing, creating and handling PLC projects”.

The next granularity level of importing template files for the PLC is to import existing POUs, like function blocks, structs, enums, global variable lists, etc. One of the reasons a developer may choose individual POUs as templates, is that it is easier to build a pool of existing functionalities and encapsulate them in separate POUs, e.g. different function blocks covering different sorting algorithms. Upon project creation, the developer simply chooses which functionality he needs in his TwinCAT project and accesses the template tool to retrieve the corresponding POU and import it to his PLC project.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProject = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Name^Name Project");
plcProject.CreateChild("NameOfPou", 58, null, pathToPouFile);
plcProject.CreateChild(null, 58, null, stringArrayWithPathsToPouFiles);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Name^Name Project")
$plcProject.CreateChild("NameOfPou", 58, $null, $pathToPouFile)
$plcProject.CreateChild($null, 58, $null, $stringArrayWithPathsToPouFiles)
```

NOTE**Importing one or more templates**

A POU template file may not only be a .TcPou file but also the corresponding files for DUTs and/or GVLs. The example above demonstrates two common ways to import POU template files. The first is to import a single file, the second to import multiple files at once by storing the file paths to a string array and using this string array as the vInfo parameter of CreateChild().

4.3.3.6 Accessing TwinCAT Remote Manager

This documentation article describes how to access the TwinCAT Remote Manager functionality via Automation Interface. The TwinCAT Remote Manager allows to switch between different TwinCAT 3 XAE versions that have been installed on the same engineering computer. To access the Remote Manager via Automation Interface, simply execute the following code snippets.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcRemoteManager remoteManager = dte.GetObject("TcRemoteManager");
remoteManager.Version = "3.1.4020.0";
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$remoteManager = $dte.GetObject("TcRemoteManager")
```

```
$remoteManager.Version = "3.1.4020.0"
```

4.3.3.7 Assigning tasks to CPU cores

Procedure

- Enabling the Cores for realtime usage.
- Parametrization of the Cores with the LoadLimit, base cycle time (BaseTime) and a Latency Watchdog
- Assignment of Tasks to CPU resources.

The following code snippets are also available for download in our Samples section.

Sample (C#):

```
ITcSysManager3 systemManager = null;
[Flags()]
public enum CpuAffinity : ulong
{
    CPU1 = 0x0000000000000001,
    CPU2 = 0x0000000000000002,
    CPU3 = 0x0000000000000004,
    CPU4 = 0x0000000000000008,
    CPU5 = 0x0000000000000010,
    CPU6 = 0x0000000000000020,
    CPU7 = 0x0000000000000040,
    CPU8 = 0x0000000000000080,
    None = 0x0000000000000000,
    MaskSingle = CPU1,
    MaskDual = CPU1 | CPU2,
    MaskQuad = MaskDual | CPU3 | CPU4,
    MaskHexa = MaskQuad | CPU5 | CPU6,
    MaskOct = MaskHexa | CPU7 | CPU8,
    MaskAll = 0xFFFFFFFFFFFFFFFF
}

public void AssignCPUCores()
{
    ITcSmTreeItem realtimeSettings = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRS");
    // CPU Settings
    // <TreeItem>
    // <RTimeSetDef>
    // <MaxCPUs>3</MaxCPUs>
    // <Affinity>#x0000000000000007</Affinity>
    // <CPUs>
    // <CPU id="0">
    // <LoadLimit>10</LoadLimit>
    // <BaseTime>10000</BaseTime>
    // <LatencyWarning>200</LatencyWarning>
    // </CPU>
    // <CPU id="1">
    // <LoadLimit>20</LoadLimit>
    // <BaseTime>5000</BaseTime>
    // <LatencyWarning>500</LatencyWarning>
    // </CPU>
    // <CPU id="2">
    // <LoadLimit>30</LoadLimit>
    // <BaseTime>3333</BaseTime>
    // <LatencyWarning>1000</LatencyWarning>
    // </CPU>
    // </CPUs>
    // </RTimeSetDef>
    // </TreeItem>

    string xml = null;
    MemoryStream stream = new MemoryStream();
    StringWriter stringWriter = new StringWriter();
    using(XmlWriter writer = XmlTextWriter.Create(stringWriter))
    {
        writer.WriteStartElement("TreeItem");
        writer.WriteStartElement("RTimeSetDef");
        writer.WriteElementString("MaxCPUs", "4");
        string affinityString = string.Format("#x{0}", ((ulong)
        cpuAffinity.MaskQuad).ToString("x16"));
        writer.WriteElementString("Affinity", affinityString);
        writer.WriteStartElement("CPUs");
```



```

writeCpuProperties(writer, 0, 10, 1000, 10000, 200);
writeCpuProperties(writer, 1, 20, 5000, 10000, 500);
writeCpuProperties(writer, 2, 30, 3333, 10000, 1000);
writer.WriteEndElement(); // CPUs
writer.WriteEndElement(); // RTimeSetDef
writer.WriteEndElement(); // TreeItem
}
xml = stringWriter.ToString();
realtimeSettings.ConsumeXml(xml);
ITcSmTreeItem tasks = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT");
ITcSmTreeItem task1 = tasks.CreateChild("TaskA",1);
setTaskProperties(task1,CpuAffinity.CPU1);
ITcSmTreeItem task2 = tasks.CreateChild("TaskB",1);
setTaskProperties(task2, CpuAffinity.CPU2);

ITcSmTreeItem task3 = tasks.CreateChild("TaskC", 1);
setTaskProperties(task3, CpuAffinity.CPU3);
}

private void setTaskProperties(ITcSmTreeItem task, CpuAffinity affinityMask)
{
// <TreeItem>
// <TaskDef>
// <CpuAffinity>#x0000000000000004</CpuAffinity>
// </TaskDef>
// </TreeItem>

StringWriter stringWriter = new StringWriter();
using(XmlWriter writer = new XmlTextWriter(stringWriter))
{
writer.WriteStartElement("TreeItem");
writer.WriteStartElement("TaskDef");
string affinityString = string.Format("#x{0}", ((ulong)affinityMask).ToString("x16"));
writer.WriteElementString("CpuAffinity",affinityString);
writer.WriteEndElement();
writer.WriteEndElement();
}

string xml = stringWriter.ToString();
task.ConsumeXml(xml);
}

private void writeCpuProperties(XmlWriter writer, int id, int loadLimit, int baseTime, int
latencyWarning)
{
writer.WriteStartElement("CPU");
writer.WriteAttributeString("id", id.ToString());
writer.WriteElementString("LoadLimit", loadLimit.ToString());
writer.WriteElementString("BaseTime", baseTime.ToString());
writer.WriteElementString("LatencyWarning", latencyWarning.ToString());
writer.WriteEndElement();
}

```

4.3.3.8 Configuring TwinCAT Boot settings

The following documentation article describes how to configure the TwinCAT Boot settings via Automation Interface. For this the methods `ITcSmTreeItem::ProduceXml()` and `ITcSmTreeItem::ConsumeXml()` can be used to generate or import the following XML structure, which represents the corresponding settings in TwinCAT XAE.

```

<TreeItem>
  <System>
    <BootSettings>
      <AutoRun>true</AutoRun>
      <AutoLogon>true</AutoLogon>
      <LogonUserName>UserName</LogonUserName>
      <LogonPassword>Password</LogonPassword>
      <BootFileEncryptionType>None</BootFileEncryptionType>
    </BootSettings>
  </System>
</TreeItem>

```

4.3.3.9 Activate or deactivate IndependentProjectFile setting

To enhance engineering experience with regard to Source Control integration, TwinCAT 3 provides the possibility to store settings in separate project files – called “IndependentProjectFile”. This tree item based setting can also be activated/deactivated via TwinCAT Automation Interface. The interface ITcSmTreeItem6 provides the necessary property.

The following code snippet demonstrates how to activate this setting if it is deactivated, e.g. on an EtherCAT Master device.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem6 etherCatMaster = (ITcSmTreeItem6)systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)");
if (etherCatMaster.SaveInOwnFile == false)
    etherCatMaster.SaveInOwnFile = true;
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$etherCatMaster = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)")
if ($etherCatMaster.SaveInOwnFile -eq $false)
{
    $etherCatMaster.SaveInOwnFile = $true
}
```

4.3.3.10 From offline to online configurations

This article explains how to convert a TwinCAT configuration, which has been created 'offline', via TwinCAT Automation Interface to an online configuration. The term "offline" means that no physical I/Os are present at the time of configuration creation and therefore the real address information is not available, e.g. for an EtherCAT Master . The following topics are part of this article:

- General information
- Creating an offline configuration
- Switching to an online configuration

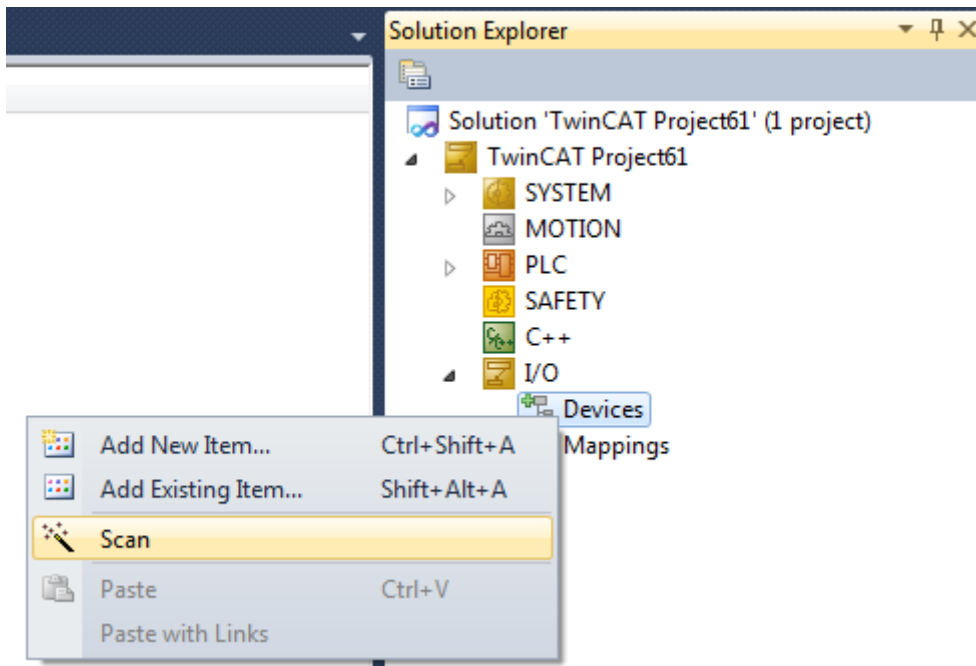
General information

When creating a TwinCAT configuration, there are two common scenarios:

- Scenario 1: this scenario is based on the real physical device, on which the TwinCAT configuration should run later. Therefore, all I/Os are **online** and already available and attached to the device.
- Scenario 2: this scenario could involve to create the configuration **offline** (that means without any I/Os attached to the engineering device) and later switch to an online configuration when the I/Os are available. This is the scenario which will be the primary focus of this article.

Both scenarios are possible via TwinCAT Automation Interface. However, as scenario 2 lacks some important information about some of the I/Os, e.g. their physical addresses, this scenario could be slightly more complex because you need to hand in the required (address) information later.

The familiar TwinCAT XAE functionality "Scan Devices" plays a significant role in this use-case because it scans for all available I/O devices and automatically attaches them to the configuration - together with all needed additional information, e.g. physical addresses.



On a physical controller, this functionality can also be called via Automation Interface and then returns an XML representation of all found I/O devices including their corresponding address information.

When a TwinCAT configuration should be activated on the controller, the required address information needs to be set for all I/O devices that are part of the configuration. This can be done by calling the "Scan Devices" functionality via Automation Interface and setting the address information for the I/O devices in the configuration. This will be explained in more detail now.

Creating an offline configuration

There are several articles which explain how to create an offline TwinCAT configuration. Please refer to our [Product Description \[► 10\]](#) page to get an overview.

Switching to an online configuration

If you finally have created a TwinCAT configuration that should now be activated on the physical controller, the following steps need to be taken to ensure that all required address information is available before downloading the configuration:

- Step 1 [optional]: Connecting to the target device
- Step 2: Scanning the device for available I/Os
- Step 3: Iterating through XML and configuring address information of I/Os
- Step 4: Activating the configuration

Of course, you can also always create an online configuration directly by using the ScanDevices functionality. There is an own [sample \[► 93\]](#) which shows you exactly how to do that.

Step 1 [optional]: Connecting to the target device

If the physical controller is not located on the same machine as the Automation Interface code runs on, you can use the `ITcSysManager [► 116]::SetTargetNetId() [► 121]` method to connect to the remote device and then continue with the next steps.

Step 2: Scanning the device for available I/Os

The "Scan Devices" functionality mentioned above can be triggered via Automation Interface by calling the `ITcSmTreeItem::ProduceXml()` method on the I/O devices node.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem ioDevices = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
string foundDevices = ioDevices.ProduceXml();
```

Step 3: Iterating through XML and configuring address information of I/Os

In this example we want to update the address information of an EtherCAT device which is already part of our offline configuration. The ProduceXml() in step 2 has already returned the available I/O devices on the system, which is now available in the variable 'foundDevices'. We will identify the EtherCAT device in this XML via its item sub type (111) and then update the address information of the EtherCAT Master in our configuration.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
XmlDocument doc = new XmlDocument();
doc.LoadXml(foundDevices);
XmlNodeList devices = doc.SelectNodes("TreeItem/DeviceGrpDef/FoundDevices/Device");
foreach (XmlNode device in devices)
{
    XmlNode typeNode = device.SelectSingleNode("ItemSubType");
    int subType = int.Parse(typeNode.InnerText);
    if (subType == 111)
    {
        XmlNode addressInfo = device.SelectSingleNode("AddressInfo");
        ITcSmTreeItem deviceToUpdate = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master");
        string xmlAddress = string.Format("<TreeItem><DeviceDef>{0}</DeviceDef></TreeItem>",
addressInfo.OuterXml);
        deviceToUpdate.ConsumeXml(xmlAddress);
    }
}
```

Step 4: Activating the configuration

The last step only involves activating the configuration on the target device. Simply use the ITcSysManager::ActivateConfiguration() method to do that.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
sysManager.ActivateConfiguration();
```

4.3.3.11 Access to TwinCAT variant management

This article describes access to the functions of the TwinCAT variant management via the Automation Interface. Access is possible from iTcSysManager14 (TCatSysManagerLib V 3.3.0.0). The following functions are supported:

1. Adding project variants and groups of variants
2. Setting the active variant
3. Activate settings for variant management

1. Adding project variants and groups of variants

Code snippet (C#):

```
string variantConfig = "<?xml version=\"1.0\"?><ProjectVariants><Group><Name>Group1</Name><Member>Variant1</Member><Member>Variant2</Member></Group><Group><Name>Group2</Name><Member>Variant2</Member><Member>Variant3</Member></Group><Variant><Name>Variant1</Name></Variant><Variant><Name>Variant2</Name></Variant><Variant><Name>Variant3</Name></Variant></ProjectVariants>";
sysManager.ProjectVariantConfig = variantConfig;
```

2. Setting the active variant

Code snippet (C#):

```
sysManager.CurrentProjectVariant = "Variant3";
sysManager.CurrentProjectVariant = "[Group1]";
```

3. Activate settings for variant management

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem9 el2004_1 = (ITcSmTreeItem9) sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT
Master^EK1100-1^EL2004-1");
// activate the "disable" setting for the Variant Management
el2004_1.PvDisable = true;
// choose a variant and disable it only for this variant
sysManager.CurrentProjectVariant = "Variant3";
el2004_1.Disabled = DISABLED_STATE.SMDS_DISABLED;
```

4.3.4 ADS

4.3.4.1 Creating and handling ADS routes

Adding ADS routes via the Automation Interface can be achieved by using the `ConsumeXml()` method of the `ITcSmTreeItem` interface. However, it is important to understand the underlying XML structure before adding routes to a remote target.

XML structure

The following code snippets represent sample XML structures for adding routes to a remote target. Please note that you can either specify the IP address or the hostname of the remote target.

This code snippet will add a regular route to a remote target.

Code Snippet (XML):

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRR</PathName>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch>
    </TargetList>
    <AddRoute>
      <RemoteName>RouteName</RemoteName>
      <RemoteNetId>1.2.3.4.5.6</RemoteNetId>
      <RemoteIpAddr>1.2.3.4</RemoteIpAddr>
      <UserName>userName</UserName>
      <Password>password</Password>
      <NoEncryption></NoEncryption>
      <LocalName>LocalName</LocalName>
    </AddRoute>
  </RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>
```

This code snippet will add a project route to a remote target.

Code Snippet (XML):

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRR</PathName>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch>
    </TargetList>
    <AddProjectRoute>
      <Name>RouteName</Name>
      <NetId>1.2.3.4.5.6</NetId>
      <IpAddr>1.2.3.4</IpAddr>
    </AddProjectRoute>
  </RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>
```

The following code snippet will use the hostname instead of the IP address.

Code Snippet (XML):

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRR</PathName>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch>
```

```

</TargetList>
<AddRoute>
  <RemoteName>RouteName</RemoteName>
  <RemoteNetId>1.2.3.4.5.6</RemoteNetId>
  <RemoteHostName>CX-12345</RemoteHostName>
  <UserName>userName</UserName>
  <Password>password</Password>
  <NoEncryption></NoEncryption>
  <LocalName>LocalName</LocalName>
</AddRoute>
</RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>

```

And for project routes.

Code Snippet (XML):

```

<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIRR</PathName>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch>
    </TargetList>
    <AddProjectRoute>
      <Name>RouteName</Name>
      <NetId>1.2.3.4.5.6</NetId>
      <HostName>1.2.3.4</HostName>
    </AddProjectRoute>
  </RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>

```

Please note that the XML structure for regular and project routes may be used simultaneously.

The following code snippet creates an ADS route to a remote target that has been specified by its IP address (10.1.128.217) and its AMS NetId (10.1.128.217.1.1).

Code Snippet (C#):

```

string xmlString = "<TreeItem><ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName><PathName>TIRR</PathName><RoutePrj><TargetList><BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch></TargetList><AddRoute><RemoteName>RouteName</RemoteName><RemoteNetId>10.1.128.217.1.1</RemoteNetId><RemoteIpAddr>10.1.128.217</RemoteIpAddr><UserName>Administrator</UserName><Password>1</Password><NoEncryption></NoEncryption></AddRoute></RoutePrj></TreeItem>";
ITcSmTreeItem routes = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRR");
routes.ConsumeXml(xmlString);

```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```

$xmlString = "<TreeItem><ItemName>Route Settings</ItemName><PathName>TIRR</PathName><RoutePrj><TargetList><BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch></TargetList><AddRoute><RemoteName>RouteName</RemoteName><RemoteNetId>10.1.128.217.1.1</RemoteNetId><RemoteIpAddr>10.1.128.217</RemoteIpAddr><UserName>Administrator</UserName><Password>1</Password><NoEncryption></NoEncryption></AddRoute></RoutePrj></TreeItem>"
$routes = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRR")
$routes.ConsumeXml($xmlString)

```

4.3.4.2 Execute an ADS broadcast search

To trigger a TwinCAT Broadcast search and find unknown remote ADS devices, the ConsumeXml() and ProduceXml() methods from the ITcSmTreeItem interface may be used.

General broadcast search

Code Snippet (C#):

```

string xmlString = "<TreeItem><RoutePrj><TargetList><BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch></TargetList></RoutePrj></TreeItem>";
ITcSmTreeItem routes = sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIRR");
routes.ConsumeXml(xmlString);
string result = routes.ProduceXml();

```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$xmlString = "<TreeItem><RoutePrj><TargetList><BroadcastSearch>true</BroadcastSearch></TargetList></RoutePrj></TreeItem>"
$routes = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRR")
$routes.ConsumeXml($xmlString)
$result = $routes.ProduceXml()
```

The variable "result" now contains an XML representation of all found ADS devices on the network. To select a specific device from that list, regular .NET mechanisms for XML handling may be used.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
XmlDocument xmlDoc = new XmlDocument();
xmlDoc.Load(result);
string amsNetId = xmlDoc.SelectSingleNode("//TreeItem/RoutePrj/TargetList/Target/IpAddr[text()='\" + ipAddress + "\"]/../NetId").InnerText;
string name = xmlDoc.SelectSingleNode("//TreeItem/RoutePrj/TargetList/Target/IpAddr[text()='\" + ipAddress + "\"]/../Name").InnerText;
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$xmlDocument = [xml]$result
$localAmsNetId = $xmlDocument.TreeItem.RoutePrj.Target
```

This information might then be used to add a route to that ADS device, as described in a separate documentation article.

Direct broadcast search

Requires at least TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4020.10 or higher.

To execute a broadcast search with a given hostname or IP address, the following XML structures can be used in ConsumeXml().

XML - Search for Hostname:

```
<TreeItem>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <Search>CX-12345</Search>
    </TargetList>
  </RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>
```

XML - Search for IP address:

```
<TreeItem>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <Search>172.17.60.153</Search>
    </TargetList>
  </RoutePrj>
</TreeItem>
```

A subsequent ProduceXml() will return the found host as follows:

XML - Found host:

```
<TreeItem>
  <RoutePrj>
    <TargetList>
      <Target>
        <Name>CX-12345</Name>
        <NetId>172.17.60.153.1.1</NetId>
        <IpAddr>172.17.60.153</IpAddr>
        <Version>3.1.4020</Version>
        <OS>Windows 7</OS>
      </Target>
    </TargetList>
```

```
</RoutePrj>
```

```
</TreeItem>
```

4.3.5 PLC

4.3.5.1 Accessing, creating and handling PLC projects

This chapter explains in-depth how to create, access and handle PLC projects. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about PLC projects
- Creating and handling PLC projects
- Opening existing PLC projects
- Nested projects and project instances
- Saving the PLC project as a library
- Handling online functionalities (Login, StartPlc, StopPlc)
- Setting Boot project options
- Saving project and/or solution as archive
- Calling CheckAllObjects()

General information about PLC projects

PLC projects are specified by their so-called project template. TwinCAT currently deploys two templates which are represented by a template file in the TwinCAT directory. The following table shows which PLC templates are available and the corresponding template file:

Template name	Template file
Standard PLC template	C:\TwinCAT\3.x\Components\Plc\PlcTemplate\Plc Templates\Standard PLC Template.plcproj
Empty PLC template	C:\TwinCAT\3.x\Components\Plc\PlcTemplate\Plc Templates\Empty PLC Template.plcproj

Creating and handling PLC projects

To create a new PLC project via Automation Interface, you need to navigate to the PLC node and then execute the CreateChild() method with the corresponding template file as a parameter.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plc = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC");
ITcSmTreeItem newProject = plc.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 0, "", pathToTemplateFile);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC")
$newProject = $plc.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 0, "", pathToTemplateFile)
```

● Please note

i When using standard PLC templates as provided by Beckhoff, please make sure to only use the template name instead of the full path, e.g. "Standard PLC Template".

All subsequent operations, like creating and handling POU's and filling them with code, are described in a separate article.

After the PLC project has been created, it can be further handled by casting it to the special interface `ITcPlcIECProject` [▶ 168], which provided more functionalities and access to the projects specific attributes:

Code snippet (C#):


```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProject = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^NameOfProject^NameOfProject Project");
ITcPlcIECProject iecProject = (ITcPlcIECProject) plcProject;
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^NameOfProject^NameOfProject Project")
```

The object "iecProject" can now be used to access the methods of the ITcPlcIECProject interface, e.g. to save the PLC project as a PLC library.

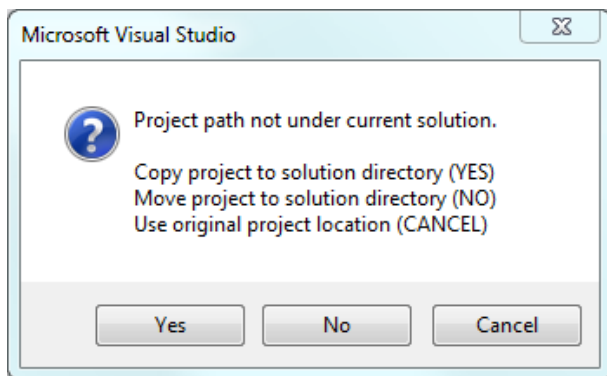
Opening existing PLC projects

To open an existing PLC-Project via Automation Interface, you need to navigate to the PLC node and then execute the CreateChild() method with the path to the corresponding PLC project file file as a parameter.

You can use three different values as SubType:

- 0: Copy project to solution directory
- 1: Move project to solution directory
- 2: Use original project location (when used, please use "" as project name parameter)

Basically, these values represent the functionalities (Yes, No, Cancel) from the following MessageBox in TwinCAT XAE:



In place of the template file you need to use the path to the PLC project (to its plcproj file) that needs to be added. As an alternative, you can also use a PLC project archive (tzip file).

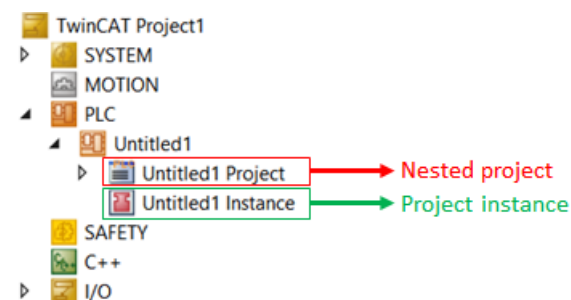
Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plc = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC");
ITcSmTreeItem newProject = plc.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 1, "", pathToProjectOrTzipFile);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC")
$newProject = $plc.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 1, "", pathToProjectOrTzipFile)
```

TwinCAT PLC Projects consist of two different areas – the so-called Nested Project and the Project Instance. The Nested Project (tree item sub type 56) contains the source code of the PLC program whereas the Project Instance contains the declared input and output variables of the PLC program.



The following code snippet demonstrates a common way to generically access both tree items, if the full path name is not known.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plc = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC");
foreach (ITcSmTreeItem plcProject in plc)
{
    ITcProjectRoot projectRoot = (ITcProjectRoot)plcProject;
    ITcSmTreeItem nestedProject = projectRoot.NestedProject;
    ITcSmTreeItem projectInstance = plcProject.get_Child(1);
}
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc = $sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC")
ForEach( $plcProject in $plc)
{
    $nestedProject = $plcProject.NestedProject
    $projectInstance = $plcProject.get_Child(1)
}
```

Please note

i A minimum of TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4018 is required to access the interface ITcProjectRoot.

Saving the PLC project as a library

To save a PLC project as a PLC library, you need to make use of the [ITcPlcIECProject](#) [[168](#)]::SaveAsLibrary() [[171](#)] method.

Code snippet (C#):

```
iecProject.SaveAsLibrary(pathToLibraryFile, false);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject.SaveAsLibrary(pathToLibraryFile, $false)
```

The second parameter determines whether the library should be installed to the default repository after it has been saved as a file.

Handling online functionalities (Login, StartPlc, StopPlc, ResetCold, ResetOrigin)

Required version: TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4010 and above

The Automation Interface also provides you with PLC online features, for example to login to a PLC runtime and start/stop/reset the PLC program. These features can be accessed via the [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [[124](#)]::ProduceXml() [[158](#)] and [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [[124](#)]::ConsumeXml() [[159](#)] methods. These functions can be used on a [ITcPlcIECProject](#) [[168](#)] node.

XML structure:

```
<TreeItem>
<IECProjectDef>
<OnlineSettings>
<Commands>
    <LoginCmd>false</LoginCmd>
    <LogoutCmd>false</LogoutCmd>
    <StartCmd>false</StartCmd>
    <StopCmd>false</StopCmd>
</Commands>
</OnlineSettings>
</IECProjectDef>
</TreeItem>
```

Code snippet (C#):

```
string xml = "<TreeItem><IECProjectDef><OnlineSettings><Commands><LoginCmd>true</LoginCmd></Commands></OnlineSettings></IECProjectDef></TreeItem>";
ITcSmTreeItem plcProject = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^NameOfProject^NameOfProject Project");
plcProject.ConsumeXml(xml);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

The following table describes every XML node in more detail:

XML	Description
LoginCmd	true = in SPS-Laufzeit einloggen
LogoutCmd	true = aus SPS-Laufzeit ausloggen
StartCmd	true = Starten des aktuell in die Laufzeit geladenen SPS-Programms
StopCmd	true = Stoppen des aktuell in die Laufzeit geladenen SPS-Programms

Please note: In order to use commands like ResetOriginCmd, you must first execute a LoginCmd - similar to TwinCAT XAE.

Setting Boot project options

The following code snippet demonstrates how to use the ITcPlcProject interface to set Boot project options for a PLC project.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProjectRoot = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated");
ITcPlcProject plcProjectRootIec = (ITcPlcProject) plcProjectRoot;
plcProjectRootIec.BootProjectAutostart = true;
plcProjectRootIec.GenerateBootProject(true);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated")
$plcProject.BootProjectAutostart = $true
$plcProject.GenerateBootProject($true)
```

Saving project and/or solution as archive

To save the whole TwinCAT solution in an ZIP compatible archive (*.tzip), the ITcSysManager9 interface may be used.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSysManager9 newSysMan = (ITcSysManager9)systemManager;
newSysMan.SaveAsArchive(@"C:\test.tzip");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$systemManager.SaveAsArchive("C:\test.tzip")
```

To reload a previously saved TSZIP file, the DTE method AddFromTemplate() may be used.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
dte.Solution.AddFromTemplate("C:\test.tzip",@"C:\tmp","CreatedFromTemplate");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$dte.Solution.AddFromTemplate("C:\test.tzip","C:\tmp","CreatedFromTemplate")
```

To save a specific PLC project in an ZIP compatible archive (*.tpzip), the method ITcSmTreeItem::ExportChild() may be used.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plc= sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC");
plc.ExportChild("PlcProject",@"C:\PlcTemplate.tpzip");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC")
$plc.ExportChild("PlcProject", "C:\PlcTemplate.tpzip")
```

To reload a previously saved TPZIP file, the ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild() method may be used.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
plcConfig.CreateChild("PlcFromTemplate", 0, null, @"C:\PlcTemplate.tpzip");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plc.CreateChild("plcFromTemplate", 0, $null, "C:\PlcTemplate.tpzp")
```

Calling CheckAllObjects()

To call the CheckAllObjects() method on the PLC Nested Project, you can use the corresponding method that is available in interface ITcPlcIECProject2.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProject = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^NameOfProject^NameOfProject Project");  
ITcPlcIECProject2 iecProject = (ITcPlcIECProject2) plcProject;  
iecProject.CheckAllObjects();
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^NameOfProject^NameOfProject Project")  
$plcProject.CheckAllObjects()
```

4.3.5.2 Accessing, creating and handling PLC-Libraries and -Placeholde

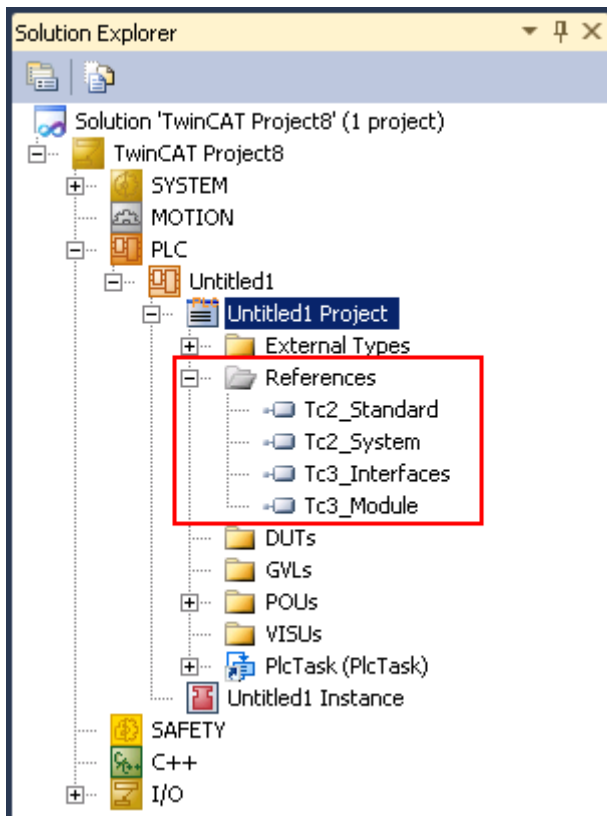
This chapter explains in-depth how to access and handle PLC libraries and PLC placeholders. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about PLC libraries and placeholders
- Navigating through references
- Adding references
- Removing references
- Scanning available libraries
- Freezing placeholder version
- Working with repositories

General information about PLC libraries and placeholders

In TwinCAT 3 there are two types of library objects: Libraries and Placeholders. For more information about both types please see the [TwinCAT 3 documentation about Library Management](#).

In a TwinCAT 3 PLC project, references to libraries and placeholders are added as child items to the References node under the corresponding PLC project. When choosing the "Standard PLC Project" template, some libraries and placeholders are being added to the project by default, e.g. Tc2_Standard, Tc2_System,



Using Automation Interface, you can navigate to the References node simply by using the [ITcSysManager](#) [[▶ 116](#)]::LookupTreeItem() [[▶ 124](#)] method.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
```

To be able to handle this object correctly, you need to type cast it to the [ITcPlcLibraryManager](#) interface.

```
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
```

Please note that this step is not required in Windows Powershell.

Navigating through references

You can iterate through all references by making use of the [ITcPlcLibraryManager](#) [[▶ 171](#)]::References property. This property returns an [ITcPlcReferences](#) collection of either library objects (represented by [ITcPlcLibrary](#) [[▶ 177](#)]) or placeholder objects (represented by [ITcPlcPlaceholderRef](#)).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
foreach (ITcPlcLibRef libRef in libManager.References)
{
    if (libRef is ITcPlcLibrary)
    {
        ITcPlcLibrary library = (ITcPlcLibrary) libRef;
        // do something
    }
    else if (libRef is ITcPlcPlaceholderRef)
    {
        ITcPlcPlaceholderRef placeholder = (ITcPlcPlaceholderRef) libRef;
```

```
// do something
}
}
```

The object `libRef`, which is used for the iteration, is of type `ITcPlcLibRef`. This is a common base class for `ITcPlcLibrary` and `ITcPlcPlaceholderRef` objects. To work with one of these specific classes, we need to type cast the object accordingly, as shown in the code snippet above.

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
ForEach( $libRef in $references )
{
    $libRef.LanguageIndependentName
}
```

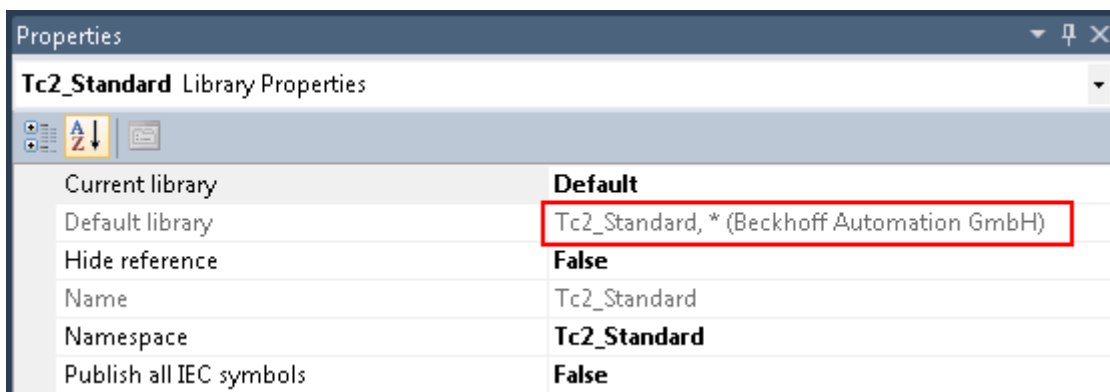
Adding references

There are two methods in the `ITcPlcLibraryManager` [▶ 171] class which allow you to add a library or placeholder reference to a PLC project: `AddLibrary()` and `AddPlaceholder()`.

Adding a library can be achieved in two ways:

- Either by specifying the library name, version and distributor
- or by using the library display name
- or (in case of a placeholder) by using the placeholder name

The display name of a library can be determined in the properties window of a library or placeholder:



Adding libraries:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
libManager.AddLibrary("Tc2_MDP", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH"); // name, version, distribution
list
libManager.AddLibrary("Tc2_Math, * (Beckhoff Automation GmbH)"); //monitored name
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$references.AddLibrary("Tc2_MDP", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH")
$references.AddLibrary("Tc2_Math, * (Beckhoff Automation GmbH)")
```

Adding a placeholder can be achieved in two ways:

- Either by specifying the placeholder name, library name, library version and library distributor
- or by using the placeholder name if the placeholder already exists

Adding placeholders:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
libManager.AddPlaceholder("Tc2_MC2_Camming"); // add existing place holder with name
libManager.AddPlaceholder("Placeholder_NC", "Tc2_NC", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$references.AddPlaceholder("Tc2_MC2_Camming")
$references.AddPlaceholder("Placeholder_NC", "Tc2_NC", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH")
```

Please note: When adding a new placeholder, the parameters of the `AddPlaceholder()` method specify its Default Resolution. To set the Effective Resolution, simply use the `ITcPlcLibraryManager [▶ 171]::SetEffectiveResolution()` method.

Removing references

To remove a reference, simply use the method `ITcPlcLibraryManager [▶ 171]::RemoveReference()`. Because this method operates on `ITcPlcLibRef` items (which is the base class for `ITcPlcLibrary` and `ITcPlcPlaceholderRef` objects), you can use this method both for library and placeholder references.

Library references can be removed by either specifying their name, version and distributor or by specifying their display name.

Placeholder references can be removed by the placeholder name.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
libManager.RemoveReference("Tc2_Math"); // delete library
libManager.RemoveReference("Placeholder_NC"); // delete a placeholder
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$references.RemoveReference("Tc2_Math")
$references.RemoveReference("Placeholder_NC")
```

Scanning available libraries

To scan the system for all available PLC libraries, simply use the `ITcPlcLibraryManager [▶ 171]::ScanLibraries()` `[▶ 175]` method. This method returns an `ITcPlcReferences` collection of libraries (type `ITcPlcLibrary`).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
ITcPlcReferences libraries = libManager.ScanLibraries();
foreach(ITcPlcLibrary library in libraries)
{
// do something
}
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$libraries = $references.ScanLibraries()
ForEach( $lib in $libraries )
{
    $lib.Name
}
```

Freezing placeholder version

It is possible to freeze the used version of a placeholder to a specific version. This can be achieved by using the method `ITcPlcLibraryManager [▶ 171]::FreezePlaceholder()`. This method is called on an object that points to the References node.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
libManager FreezePlaceholder(); // freezes the version of all place holders
libManager FreezePlaceholder("Placeholder_NC"); // freezes the version of a specific place holder
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$references.FreezePlaceholder()
$references.FreezePlaceholder("Placeholder_NC")
```

Please note: The version is frozen to the Effective Resolution. If the Effective Resolution points to "", then the newest version in the system is used.

Working with repositories

The Automation Interface provides method for handling PLC library repositories. A default repository is part of every TwinCAT installation. To create additional repositories, you can use the [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▶ 171\]::InsertRepository\(\) \[▶ 174\]](#) method.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem references = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1
Project^References");
ITcPlcLibraryManager libManager = (ITcPlcLibraryManager) references;
libManager.InsertRepository("TestRepository", @"C:\Temp", 0);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Project^References")
$references.InsertRepository("TestRepository", "C:\Temp", 0)
```

When installing a new library into the system, the library needs to be part of a repository. This insertion can be achieved by using the [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▶ 171\]::InstallLibrary\(\) \[▶ 174\]](#) method.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
libManager.InstallLibrary("TestRepository", @"C:\SomeFolder\TcTestLibrary.library", false);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references.InstallLibrary("TestRepository", "C:\SomeFolder\TcTestLibrary.library", $false)
```

To uninstall a library from the repository, use the [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▶ 171\]::UninstallLibrary\(\) \[▶ 176\]](#) method.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
libManager.UninstallLibrary("TestRepository", "Tc2_MDP", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references.UninstallLibrary("TestRepository", "Tc2_MDP", "*", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH")
```

To remove a repository, use the [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▶ 171\]::RemoveRepository\(\) \[▶ 175\]](#) method.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
libManager.RemoveRepository("TestRepository");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$references.RemoveRepository("TestRepository")
```

4.3.5.3 Accessing, creating and handling PLC POUs

This chapter explains in-depth how to access PLC objects, for example POUs, Methods, Transitions, Properties, and how to access their corresponding implementation and declaration areas to handle PLC code. It also covers how to import/export PLC objects in PLCopen XML. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about PLC objects
- Accessing the implementation / declaration area of a POU
- Accessing Sub-POUs (Actions, Properties, ...)
- Creating PLC objects
- PLC access modifier
- Importing / Exporting PLCopen XML
- Import existing POUs (templates)

General information about PLC objects

Although every tree item is considered to be of type [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124], some items need to be casted to a more special interface to gain access to all of their methods and properties, for example POUs which need to be casted to the interface [ITcPlcPou](#) [► 165] to get access to their unique methods and properties.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcPousItem = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated
Project^POUs");
ITcSmTreeItem newFb = plcPousItem.CreateChild("FB_TEST", 604, "", IECLANGUAGETYPES.IECLANGUAGE_ST);
ITcPlcPou fbPou = (ITcPlcPou)newFb;
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcPousItem = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated Project^POUs")
$newFb = $plcPousItem.CreateChild("FB_TEST", 604, "", 6)
```

In this example, the POU *MAIN* is being created in a PLC-Project. The object *programPou* references this POU and can now be used to access specific methods and properties of the POU by using the corresponding method/property of the [ITcPlcPou](#) interface.

Accessing the implementation / declaration area of a POU

You can also get read/write access to either the implementation or declaration area of a POU by using the interfaces [ITcPlcImplementation](#) [► 167] or [ITcPlcDeclaration](#) [► 166], as the following example shows.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcPlcDeclaration fbPouDecl = (ITcPlcDeclaration) fbPou;
ITcPlcImplementation fbPouImpl = (ITcPlcImplementation) fbPou;
string decl = fbPouDecl.DeclarationText;
string impl = fbPouImpl.ImplementationText;
string implXml = fbPouImpl.ImplementationXml;
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$decl = $newFb.DeclarationText
$impl = $newFb.ImplementationText
$implXml = $newFb.ImplementationXml
```

When comparing both interfaces, you will notice that the accessible properties in both interfaces differ from each other. For example the [ITcPlcImplementation](#) interface offers a property "Language" whereas [ITcPlcDeclaration](#) doesn't. This is because, according to IEC, the declaration area is not based on a real programming language (e.g. ST), therefore this property does not make sense when used on a declaration area.

Accessing Sub-POUs (Actions, Properties, ...)

POUs may have more sub-items like Methods, Transitions, Actions and Properties. It is important to understand that not every sub-item of a POU also has both an implementation and a declaration area. Actions and Transitions, for example, only have an implementation area. Therefore, casting to one of the interfaces mentioned above is only valid if the corresponding sub-object has this area. The following table gives an overview about which areas are available in the different types of POUs.

Tree Item	Type	Declaration Area	Implementation Area
Program	POU	Yes	Yes
Function	POU	Yes	Yes
Function Block	POU	Yes	Yes
Action	POU	No	Yes
Method	POU	Yes	Yes
Property (Get/Set)	POU	Yes	Yes
Transition	POU	No	Yes
Enum	DUT	Yes	No
Struct	DUT	Yes	No
Union	DUT	Yes	No
Alias	DUT	Yes	No
Interface	Interface	Yes	No
Property (Get/Set)	Interface	Yes	Yes
Global variables	GVL	Yes	No

Creating PLC-Objects

The creation of PLC-Objects is simple and can be achieved via the `CreateChild()` [▶ 160] method of the `ITcSmTreeItem` [▶ 124] interface. Depending on the type of POU, the parameters of this method need to be interpreted differently. The following table gives the necessary information to be able to create different POU types. Please note that the `vInfo` parameter may be a string array, if more than one parameter is needed. Each array position and whether it is optional or not, is marked as [...] below.

Tree Item	Type	Parameter "nSubType"	Parameter "vInfo"
Program	POU	602	<p>[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166]. By default, ST (Structured Text) is used.</p> <p>[1, optional]: May be used for derivation (keywords "Extends" or "Implements"). If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the keyword "Extends".</p> <p>[2, optional]: Interface or POU name which should be extended/implemented (mandatory, if [1] is used). If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the library to extend..</p> <p>[3, optional]: If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the keyword "Implements".</p> <p>[4, optional]: If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the interface used for derivation.</p>
Function	POU	603	<p>[0]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166].</p> <p>[1]: Return data type of function. May be a PLC data type, e.g. DINT, BOOL, ...</p>
Function Block	POU	604	<p>[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166]. By default, ST (Structured Text) is used.</p> <p>[1, optional]: May be used for derivation (keywords "Extends" or "Implements"). If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the keyword "Extends".</p> <p>[2, optional]: Interface or POU name which should be extended/implemented (mandatory, if [1] is used). If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the library to extend..</p> <p>[3, optional]: If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the keyword "Implements".</p> <p>[4, optional]: If keywords "Extends" AND "Implements" should be used, this field specifies the interface used for derivation.</p>
Action	POU	608	<p>[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166]. By default, ST (Structured Text) is used.</p> <p>[1, optional]: May contain PLCOpen XML string with code for Action</p>
Method	POU	609	<p>[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166]. By default, ST (Structured Text) is used.</p> <p>[1, optional]: Return data type</p> <p>[2, optional]: Access modifier, e.g. PUBLIC. By default, PUBLIC is used.</p> <p>[3, optional]: May contain PLCOpen XML string with code for Action</p>
Property	POU	611	<p>[0]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166]</p> <p>[1]: Return data type</p> <p>[2, optional]: Access modifier, e.g. PUBLIC. By default, PUBLIC is used.</p>

Tree Item	Type	Parameter "nSubType"	Parameter "vInfo"
Property Get	POU	613	[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166] . By default, ST (Structured Text) is used. [1, optional]: Access modifier, e.g. PUBLIC. By default, PUBLIC is used. [2, optional]: May contain PLCopen XML string with code for Action
Property Set	POU	614	[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166] . By default, ST (Structured Text) is used. [1, optional]: Access modifier, e.g. PUBLIC. By default, PUBLIC is used. [2, optional]: May contain PLCopen XML string with code for Action
Transition	POU	616	[0, optional]: IEC programming language, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [► 166] . By default, ST (Structured Text) is used. [1, optional]: May contain PLCopen XML string with code for Action
Enum	DUT	605	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
Struct	DUT	606	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
Union	DUT	607	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
Alias	DUT	623	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
Interface	Interface	618	[0, optional]: Extending type
Property	Interface	612	[0]: Return data type
Property Get	Interface	654	No vInfo parameter is needed and "null" can be used.
Property Set	Interface	655	No vInfo parameter is needed and "null" can be used.
Method	Interface	610	[0]: Return data type
Global variables	GVL	615	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
PLC Folder	Folder	601	No vInfo parameter is needed and "null" can be used.
Parameter List	PL	629	[0, optional]: May contain declaration text
UML Class Diagram	POU	631	---

Example: The following code snippet shows how to use the vInfo parameter to create a Functionblock "FB_Test" with the keywords extends and/or implements, depending on the value of the bool variables *bExtends* and *bImplements*. The extended library is *ADSRDSTATE* and the implemented interface *ITcADI*.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string[] vInfo;
bool bExtends = true;
bool bImplements = true;

if (bExtends && bImplements)
{
    vInfo= new string[5];
}
else
{
    if (bExtends || bImplements)
    {
        vInfo= new string[3];
    }
}
```

```

else
{
    vInfo= new string[1];
}
}
vInfo[0] = language.AsString();
if (bExtends && bImplements)
{
    vInfo[1] = "Extends";
    vInfo[2] = "ADSRDSTATE";
    vInfo[3] = "Implements";
    vInfo[4] = "ITcADI";
}
else
{
    if (bExtends)
    {
        vInfo[1] = "Extends";
        vInfo[2] = "ADSRDSTATE";
    }
    else
    {
        if (bImplements)
        {
            vInfo[1] = "Implements";
            vInfo[2] = "ITcADI";
        }
    }
}

ITcSmTreeItem newPOU = parent.CreateChild("FB_Test", 604,
"", fbVInfo);

```



Please note

If the parameter `vInfo` includes only one value (marked as [0] in the table above), you shouldn't create an array of size 1, instead just use a regular variable. Example: When using `nSubType 618` (Interface), you should use `vInfo` as follows.

Code snippet (C#):

```

ITcSmTreeItem interface1 = pou.CreateChild("NewInterface1", 618, "", null); // no expansion type
ITcSmTreeItem interface2 = pou.CreateChild("NewInterface2", 618, "", "ITcUnknown"); // expands
ITcUnknown interface

```

PLC access modifier

The following access modifiers are valid and may be used as a `vInfo` parameter, as shown in the table above: PUBLIC, PRIVATE, PROTECTED, INTERNAL.

Importing / Exporting PLCopen XML

You can also import/export PLC elements in PLCopen XML, which can be achieved via the [ITcPlcIECProject \[▶ 168\]](#) interface. Methods and properties of this interface can only be executed directly on a PLC project node, for example:

Code snippet (C#):

```

ITcSmTreeItem plcProject =
systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated
Project");
ITcPlcIECProject importExport = (ITcPlcIECProject)
plcProject;
importExport.PlcOpenExport(plcOpenExportFile,
"MyPous.POUProgram;MyPous.POUFunctionBlock");
importExport.PlcOpenImport(plcOpenExportFile,
(int)PLCIMPORTOPTIONS.PLCIMPORTOPTIONS_NONE);

```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```

$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated
Project")
$plcProject.PlcOpenExport(plcOpenExportFile, "MyPous.POUProgram;MyPous.POUFunctionBlock")
$plcProject.PlcOpenImport(plcOpenExportFile,0)

```

This code snippet assumes that there is already a PLC project added to the TwinCAT configuration, which will be referenced via the object *plcProject*. This reference is casted to the object *importexport* of type *ITcPlcIECProject*, which is then used to export the POU's *POUProgram* and *POUFunctionBlock* (both reside in the PLC folder "MyPOUs") into an XML file and then import them again.

The available options for import are: None (0), Rename (1), Replace (2), Skip (3)

Import existing POUs (templates)

PLC templates are available in two units: You can either use the complete PLC project as a whole or each POU individually as a template. The later is covered in this chapter. One of the reasons a developer may choose individual POUs as templates, is that it is easier to build a pool of existing functionalities and encapsulate them in separate POUs, e.g. different function blocks covering different sorting algorithms. Upon project creation, the developer simply chooses which functionality he needs in his TwinCAT project and accesses the template tool to retrieve the corresponding POU and import it to his PLC project.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProject = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated Project");
plcProject.CreateChild("NameOfImportedPOU", 58, null, pathToPouFile);
plcProject.CreateChild(null, 58, null, stringArrayWithPathsToPouFiles);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$plcProject = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated^PlcGenerated Project")
$plcProject.CreateChild("NameOfImportedPOU", 58, $null, $pathToPouFile)
$plcProject.CreateChild($null, 58, $null, $stringArrayWithPathsToPouFiles)
```

Please note: A POU template file may not only be a .TcPou file but also the corresponding files for DUTs and/or GVLs. The example above demonstrates two common ways to import POU template files. The first is to import a single file, the second to import multiple files at once by storing the file paths to a string array and using this string array as the *vInfo* parameter of *CreateChild()*.

4.3.6 I/O

4.3.6.1 Creating and handling EtherCAT devices

This article explains how to build an EtherCAT topology via TwinCAT Automation Interface. It consists of the following topics:

- General information
- Creating an EtherCAT device
- Creating EtherCAT boxes and insert into topology
- Creating EtherCAT terminals and insert into topology
- Exceptions to the *ItemSubType* 9099
- Changing the "Previous Port" of an EtherCAT terminal
- Adding EtherCAT slaves to a *HotConnect* group
- How to add EtherCAT *SyncUnits*
- Handle EtherCAT junction boxes (CU1128)

All of these topics cover the case of an **offline** configuration, which means the real addresses of all devices are not known at the time of config creation. The last chapter of this article therefore also explains how to

- Activate the configuration

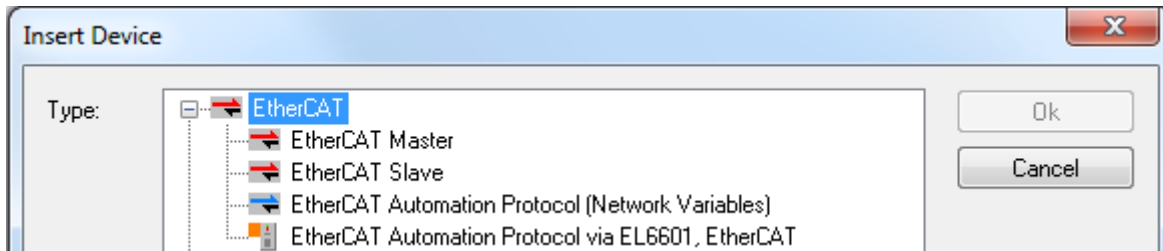
General information

This documentation should give you an overview about how to create and handle EtherCAT devices and their corresponding topology via Automation Interface. For an in-depth understanding about how EtherCAT works and how it is generally integrated in TwinCAT SystemManager/XAE, please consult the [EtherCAT](#)

[System Documentation](#) and the corresponding chapter about [EtherCAT configuration in TwinCAT](#). EtherCAT boxes and terminals, which are connected to an EtherCAT Master, share a common way of creation, which is explained in a separate article about [E-Bus sub types](#) [► 131].

Creating an EtherCAT device

The first step in creating a TwinCAT EtherCAT configuration is to create an EtherCAT device, which may involve either to create an EtherCAT Master, Slave or Automation Protocol (e.g. to use network variables, as covered in a [separate article](#) [► 76]). To create an EtherCAT Master/Slave, simply make use of the [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 160]::[CreateChild\(\)](#) [► 160] method with the corresponding parameter for SubType (EtherCAT Master = 111, EtherCAT Slave = 130).



EtherCAT Master - Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem devices = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
ethercatMaster = devices.CreateChild("EtherCAT Master", 111, null, null);
```

EtherCAT Master - Code Snippet (Powershell)

```
$devices = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$ethercatMaster = $devices.CreateChild("EtherCAT Master", 111, $null, $null)
```

EtherCAT Slave - Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem devices = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
ethercatSlave = devices.CreateChild("EtherCAT Slave", 130, null, null);
```

EtherCAT Slave - Code Snippet (Powershell)

```
$devices = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$ethercatSlave = $devices.CreateChild("EtherCAT Slave", 130, $null, $null)
```

Creating EtherCAT boxes

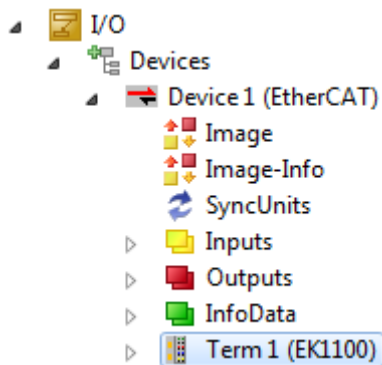
The second step involves creating EtherCAT boxes, for example an EK1100 EtherCAT Coupler. As the article about [E-Bus SubTypes](#) [► 131] explains, every child item (there a few exceptions - see below) of an EtherCAT Master uses a common SubType (9099) and will be identified via the Product Revision, which needs to be used in the `vInfo` parameter of the [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124]::[CreateChild\(\)](#) [► 160] method.

Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem ethercatMaster = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master");
ethercatMaster.CreateChild("EK1100", 9099, "", "EK1100-0000-0017");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell)

```
$ethercatMaster = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master")
$ethercatMaster.CreateChild("EK1100", 9099, "", "EK1100-0000-0017")
```



Please note: In addition to the full product revision, you can also use a "wildcard". If you only specify "EK1100" as vlnfo, Automation Interface will automatically detect and use the newest revision number. Example:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem ethercatMaster = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master");
ethercatMaster.CreateChild("EK1100", 9099, "", "EK1100");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$ethercatMaster = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master")
$ethercatMaster.CreateChild("EK1100", 9099, "", "EK1100")
```

Creating EtherCAT terminals and insert into topology

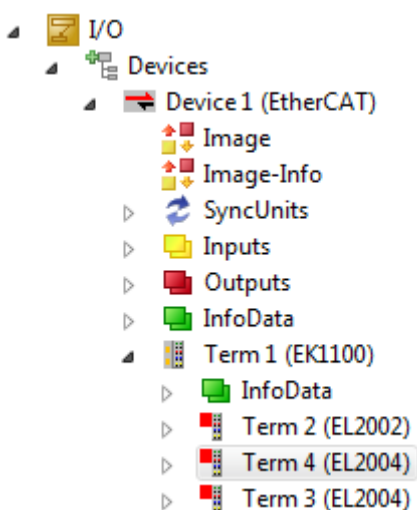
The creation of EtherCAT terminals is based on the same concepts as EtherCAT boxes. Every terminal also shares a common SubType and will be identified via the Product Revision, which needs to be used in the vlnfo parameter of the [ITcSmTreeItem \[124\]::CreateChild\(\) \[160\]](#) method. The parameter bstrBefore lets you choose the position on which the terminal should be inserted into the configuration.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem ek1100 = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^EK1100");
ek1100.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004-0000-0017");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$ek1100 = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^EK1100")
$ek1100.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004-0000-0017")
```



Please note: Should you have trouble using the bstrBefore parameter, please try to insert the terminal on a "device-level", for example:

Code Snippet (C#):


```
ITcSmTreeItem device= systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)");
device.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004-0000-0017");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$device= $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)")
$device.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004-0000-0017")
```

The new terminal will then be inserted before "Term 3 (EL2004)" under the last inserted EtherCAT box.

Please note: In addition to the full product revision, you can also use a "wildcard". If you only specify "EL2004" as vInfo, Automation Interface will automatically detect and use the newest revision number. Example:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem ek1100 = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^EK1100");
ek1100.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$ek1100 = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^EK1100")
$ek1100.CreateChild("Term 4 (EL2004)", 9099, "Term 3 (EL2004)", "EL2004")
```

Exceptions to the ItemSubType 9099

There are a few exceptions to the ItemSubType 9099, e.g. the RS232 terminals EP6002 (ItemSubType 9101) and EL600X (ItemSubType 9101). The following table gives an overview about all exceptions and their corresponding ItemSubType.

I/O	ItemSubType
EP6002	9101
EL6001	9101
EL6002	9101
EP6001-0002	9101
EP6002-0002	9101
EL6021	9103
EL6022	9103
EL6021-0021	9103
BK1120	9081
ILXB11	9086
EL6731	9093
EL6751	9094
EL6752	9095
EL6731-0010	9096
EL6751-0010	9097
EL6752-0010	9098
EL6601	9100
EL6720	9104
EL6631	9106
EL6631-0010	9107
EL6632	9108
EL6652-0010	9109
EL6652	9110

Changing the "Previous Port" of an EtherCAT terminal

The PreviousPort of an EtherCAT terminal determines the position of the terminal inside the EtherCAT topology.

Previous Port: Term 1 (EK1100) - B

In TwinCAT XAE, the DropDown box automatically includes all available previous ports. To configure this setting via Automation Interface, you can make use of the `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::ProduceXml() [▶ 158]` and `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::ConsumeXml() [▶ 159]` methods to modify the XML description [▶ 25] of the corresponding EtherCAT terminal. This XML description therefore includes one or more XML nodes `<PreviousPort>`, where its attribute "Selected=1" determines, which previous port has been currently selected. Each previous port device is identified by its physical address.

Example (XML description)

```
<TreeItem>
  <EtherCAT>
    <Slave>
      <PreviousPort Selected="1">
        <Port>B</Port>
        <PhysAddr>1045</PhysAddr>
      </PreviousPort>
      <PreviousPort>
        <Port>B</Port>
        <PhysAddr>1023</PhysAddr>
      </PreviousPort>
    </Slave>
  </EtherCAT>
</TreeItem>
```

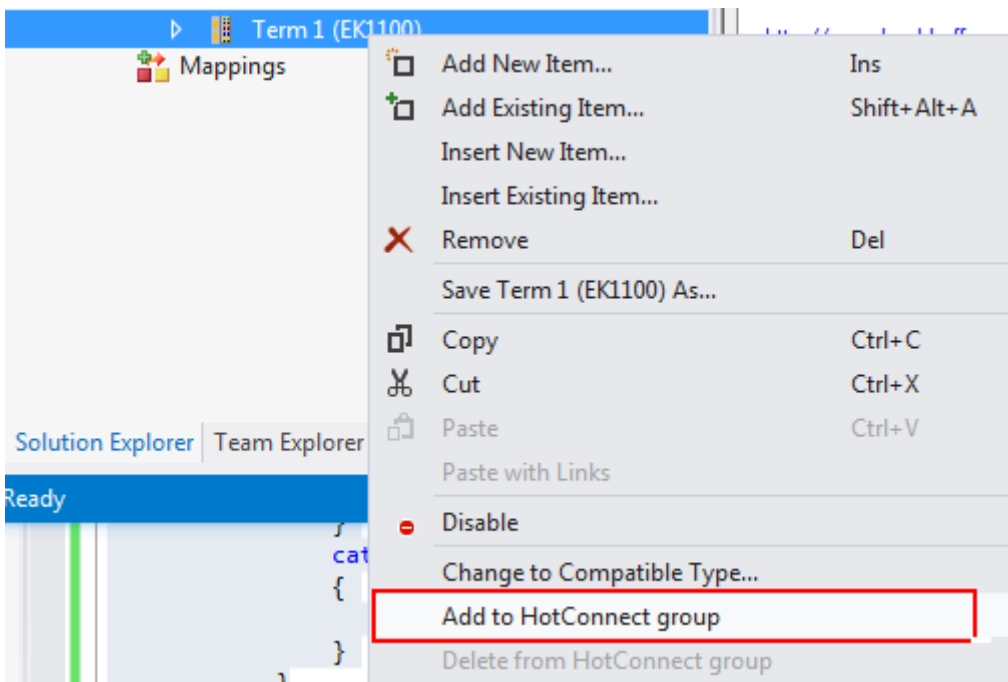
If you want to change the Previous port you need to know the `<PhysAddr>` of the desired device, which can also be determined via its XML description.

When inserting childs to an EtherCAT configuration, the `bstrBefore` parameter of the `ImportChild` or `CreateChild` method can be used to specify the previous item when calling the `ImportChild` or `CreateChild` method on a slave. On an EtherCAT master this setting has to be specified via the XML description from above.

Adding EtherCAT slaves to a HotConnect group

EtherCAT HotConnect allows pre-configured sections to be removed from or added to the data traffic before the start or during operation of the system. For more information about EtherCAT HotConnect please read our [EtherCAT System documentation](#).

In TwinCAT XAE, an EtherCAT slave can be added to a HotConnect group by clicking the corresponding option in the context menu of the device.



In TwinCAT Automation Interface, the same can be achieved by consuming the following XML structure on the EtherCAT slave:

Example (XML description):

```
<TreeItem>
<EtherCAT>
<Slave>
<HotConnect>
  <GroupName>Term 1 (EK1101)</GroupName>
  <GroupMemberCnt>4</GroupMemberCnt>
  <IdentifyCmd>
    <Comment>HotConnect-Identität lesen</Comment>
    <Requires>cycle</Requires>
    <Cmd>1</Cmd>
    <Adp>0</Adp>
    <Ado>4096</Ado>
    <DataLength>2</DataLength>
    <Cnt>1</Cnt>
    <Retries>3</Retries>
    <Validate>
      <Data>0000</Data>
      <Timeout>5000</Timeout>
    </Validate>
  </IdentifyCmd>
</HotConnect>
</Slave>
</EtherCAT>
</TreeItem>
```

Please note:

- The <GroupMemberCnt> tag needs to specify the exact amount of terminals plus the device itself

How to set EtherCAT Sync Units

EtherCAT SyncUnits can be set via ITcSmTreeItem::ConsumeXml() and by using the following XML description.

Example (XML description):

```
<TreeItem>
  <EtherCAT>
    <Slave>
      <SyncUnits>
        <SyncUnit>SyncUnit1</SyncUnit>
      </SyncUnits>
    </Slave>
  </EtherCAT>
</TreeItem>
```

Handle EtherCAT junction boxes (CU1128)

EtherCAT junction boxes can be handled similar to all other tree items. The following sample code shows how to add a CU1128 box and then add two EK1100 boxes below:

Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem cu1128 = ethercatMaster.CreateChild("CU1128", 9099, null, "CU1128");
ITcSmTreeItem cu1128_devA = cu1128.get_Child(1);
ITcSmTreeItem cu1128_devB = cu1128.get_Child(2);
ITcSmTreeItem ek1100_1 = cu1128_devA.CreateChild("EK1100-1", 9099, null, "EK1100");
ITcSmTreeItem ek1100_2 = cu1128_devB.CreateChild("EK1100-2", 9099, null, "EK1100");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell)

```
$cu1128 = $ethercatMaster.CreateChild("CU1128", 9099, $null, "CU1128")
$cu1128_devA = $cu1128.get_Child(1)
$cu1128_devB = $cu1128.get_Child(2)
$ek1100_1 = $cu1128_devA.CreateChild("EK1100-1", 9099, $null, "EK1100")
$ek1100_2 = $cu1128_devB.CreateChild("EK1100-2", 9099, $null, "EK1100")
```

Activate the EtherCAT configuration

To activate a created TwinCAT configuration via Automation Interface, the `ITcSysManager [▶ 116]::ActivateConfiguration() [▶ 119]` method may be used. However, the previous chapters only explained how to create an offline configuration, which means that every device created does not have real addresses, e.g. the EtherCAT Master has not been linked to a physical network interface card yet. Before activating the configuration you therefore need to configure each device with online addresses. To determine the real addresses, you can run a `ScanDevices` on the online system, determine the real addresses via the XML description (`ITcSmTreeltem [▶ 124]::ProduceXml() [▶ 158]`) and then import the address information via `ITcSmTreeltem [▶ 124]::ConsumeXml() [▶ 159]` into the created (offline) configuration. There are two `HowTo` samples which help you exactly with this kind of configuration:

- [Scan Devices \[▶ 93\]](#) via Automation Interface

4.3.6.2 Creating and handling network variables

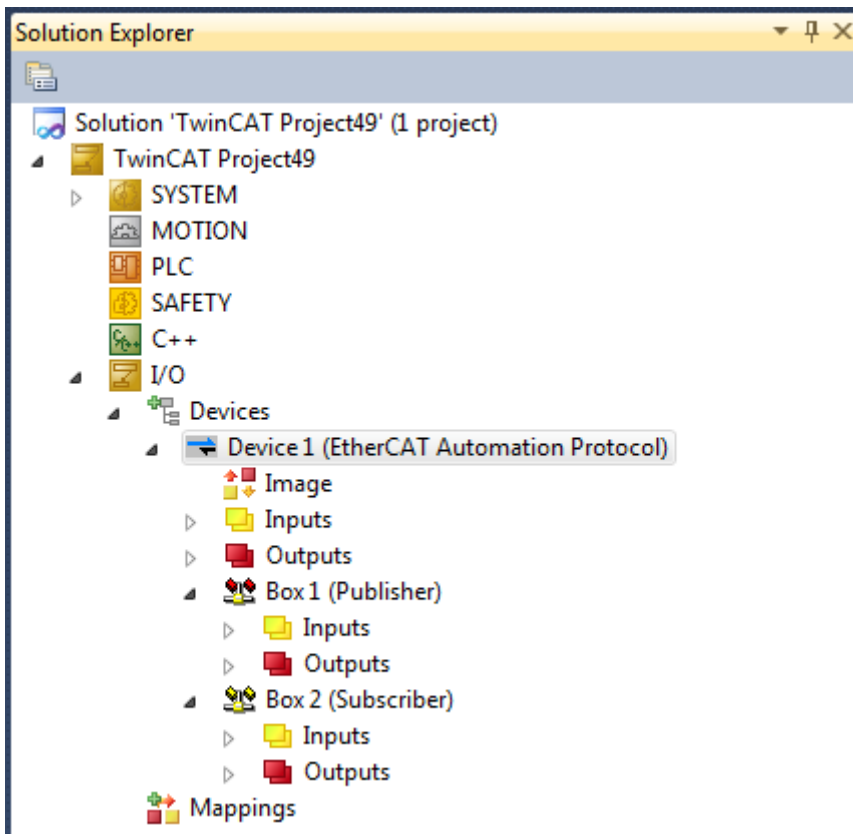
This chapter explains in-depth how to create and handle network variables. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about network variables
- Creating an EtherCAT Automation Protocol device
- Creating a Publisher box
- Creating a Subscriber box
- Setting parameters for a Publisher/Subscriber box
- Creating Publisher variables
- Creating Subscriber variables
- Linking Publisher/Subscriber variables
- Reading Publisher/Subscriber variable IDs

Please note that the [Scripting Container \[▶ 182\]](#) contains a detailed sample about how to create and configure network variables with the Automation Interface.

General information about network variables

Network variables may be used to send data between two TwinCAT devices via an IP-based network. One device declares variables as a "Publisher" (sender) and the other device receives variable values as a "Subscriber". Therefore we also speak in terms of Publisher/Subscriber variables. TwinCAT provides you with the flexibility to configure network variables directly in a TwinCAT project so that you may map them to your PLC or I/O.



Network variables use the EtherCAT Automation Protocol device to communicate via the local network. Therefore, you need to add this device before you can configure a Publisher and/or Subscriber box together with the corresponding variables.

More information about network variables and how they can be configured in TwinCAT may be found [here](#).

Creating an EtherCAT Automation Protocol device

To create the EtherCAT Automation Protocol device, the method `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::CreateChild() [▶ 160]` may be used together with the corresponding SubType of this device (112).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem devicesNode = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
device = devicesNode.CreateChild("Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)", 112, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$devicesNode = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$device = $devicesNode.CreateChild("Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)", 112, $null, $null)
```

Creating a Publisher box

The Publisher box is the container for Publisher variables, which defines for example which type of communication pattern should be used (Unicast, Multicast, Broadcast) for the variables contained within. To add a Publisher box, simply use the `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::CreateChild() [▶ 160]` method again together with the corresponding SubType (9051).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem eapDevice = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)");
pubBox = eapDevice.CreateChild("Box 1 (Publisher)", 9051, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$eapDevice = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)")
$pubBox = $eapDevice.CreateChild("Box 1 (Publisher)", 9051, $null, $null)
```

This small code snippet adds a Publisher box to the EtherCAT Automation Protocol device created earlier. To configure the communication pattern of this box, you need to customize its settings via the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::ConsumeXml\(\) \[▶ 159\]](#), method. This is shown in more detail in the EtherCAT Automation Protocol sample of the [Scripting Container \[▶ 182\]](#) or later on this page.

Creating a Subscriber box

The Subscriber box is the container for Subscriber variables, which defines for example which type of communication pattern should be used (Unicast, Multicast, Broadcast) for the variables contained within. To add a Publisher box, simply use the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::CreateChild\(\) \[▶ 160\]](#) method again together with the corresponding SubType (9052).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem eapDevice = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)");
subBox = eapDevice.CreateChild("Box 1 (Subscriber)", 9052, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$eapDevice = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)")
$subBox = $eapDevice.CreateChild("Box 1 (Subscriber)", 9052, $null, $null)
```

This small code snippet adds a Subscriber box to the EtherCAT Automation Protocol device created earlier. To configure the communication pattern of this box, you need to customize its settings via the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::ConsumeXml\(\) \[▶ 159\]](#), method. This is shown in more detail in the EtherCAT Automation Protocol sample of the [Scripting Container \[▶ 182\]](#) or later on this page.

Creating Publisher variables

After you have successfully added a Publisher box, you can add Publisher variables to this box by making use of the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::CreateChild\(\) \[▶ 160\]](#) method together with the needed parameters for SubType (0) and vInfo, which specifies the data type of the Publisher variable, e.g. "BOOL".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem pubBox = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Publisher)");
pubVar = pubBox.CreateChild("MAIN.bTestVar", 0, null, "BOOL");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$pubBox = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Publisher)")
$pubVar = $pubBox.CreateChild("MAIN.bTestVar", 0, $null, "BOOL")
```

Please see the [Scripting Container \[▶ 182\]](#) sample "EtherCAT Automation Protocol" for more information.

Setting parameters for a Publisher/Subscriber box

There are two communication patterns which need to be configured on a Publisher and/or Subscriber box: **RT-Ethernet** or **UDP/IP**. The following screenshot shows the corresponding configuration tab from TwinCAT XAE.

Sending Options

RT-Ethernet (Ether Type 88A4h)

Broadcast

Multicast

Unicast

MAC Address

AMS NetId

UDP/IP

Broadcast

Multicast

Unicast

Default Gateway:

More detailed information about these options can be found [here](#).

To configure the box for **RT-Ethernet**, you need to make use of the `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::ConsumeXml()` `[▶ 159]` method to import the following XML structure:

```
<TreeItem>
<BoxDef>
<FieldbusAddress>1</FieldbusAddress>
<AmsAddress>
<AmsPort>0</AmsPort>
<AmsPortTimeout>5</AmsPortTimeout>
</AmsAddress>
<NvPubDef>
<Udp Enabled="false"/>
  <MacAddress>00 00 00 00 00 00</MacAddress>
</IoDiv>
  <Divider>1</Divider>
  <Modulo>0</Modulo>
</IoDiv>
<VLAN>
  <Enable>>false</Enable>
  <Id>0</Id>
  <Prio>0</Prio>
</VLAN>
<ArpInterval>1000</ArpInterval>
<DisableSubscriberMonitoring>>false</DisableSubscriberMonitoring>
<TargetChangeable>>false</TargetChangeable>
</NvPubDef>
</BoxDef>
</TreeItem>
```

The following table shows how the **bold** marked nodes need to be adapted according to the desired communication pattern.

RT-Ethernet Communication pattern	<PublisherNetId>	<MacAddress>
Broadcast	0.0.0.0.0.0	FF FF FF FF FF FF
Multicast	0.0.0.0.0.0	Needs to contain a Multicast MAC Address, please refer here for more information.
Unicast - MAC Address	0.0.0.0.0.0	Needs to contain a Unicast MAC Address, please refer here for more information.
Unicast - AmsNetId	Contains AmsNetId of target computer.	00 00 00 00 00 00

Import the following XML structure if you want to use **UDP/IP**:

```
<TreeItem>
<BoxDef>
<FieldbusAddress>1</FieldbusAddress>
<AmsAddress>
<AmsPort>0</AmsPort>
<AmsPortTimeout>5</AmsPortTimeout>
</AmsAddress>
<NvPubDef>
<Udp Enabled="true">
  <Address>0.0.0.0</Address>
  <Gateway>0.0.0.0</Gateway>
</Udp>
<IoDiv>
  <Divider>1</Divider>
  <Modulo>0</Modulo>
</IoDiv>
<VLAN>
  <Enable>>false</Enable>
  <Id>0</Id>
  <Prio>0</Prio>
</VLAN>
<ArpInterval>1000</ArpInterval>
<DisableSubscriberMonitoring>>false</DisableSubscriberMonitoring>
<TargetChangeable>>false</TargetChangeable>
</NvPubDef>
</BoxDef>
</TreeItem>
```

The following table shows how the **bold** marked nodes need to be adapted according to the desired communication pattern. On the node <Udp>, the attribute "Enabled" needs to be set to "true".

RT-Ethernet Communication pattern	<Address>	<Gateway>
Broadcast	255.255.255.255	0.0.0.0
Multicast	Needs to contain a Multicast IP address. Please refer here for more information.	May contain a default gateway where the packets should be send to for routing. Otherwise you may leave it at 0.0.0.0
Unicast	Needs to contain an (Unicast) IP address. Please refer here for more information.	May contain a default gateway where the packets should be send to for routing. Otherwise you may leave it at 0.0.0.0

Creating Subscriber variables

After you have successfully added a Publisher box, you can add Publisher variables to this box by making use of the [ITcSmTreeItem \[▶ 124\]::CreateChild\(\) \[▶ 160\]](#) method together with the needed parameters for SubType (0) and vInfo, which specifies the data type of the Publisher variable, e.g. "BOOL".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem subBox = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Subscriber)");
subVar = pubBox.CreateChild("MAIN.bTestVar", 0, null, "BOOL");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$subBox = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Subscriber)")
$subVar = $pubBox.CreateChild("MAIN.bTestVar", 0, $null, "BOOL")
```

Please see the [Scripting Container \[▶ 182\]](#) sample "EtherCAT Automation Protocol" for more information.

Linking Publisher/Subscriber variables

To link Publisher/Subscriber variables to PLC variables, simply use the [ITcSysManager \[▶ 116\]::Linkvariables\(\) \[▶ 120\]](#) method.

Code Snippet (C#):


```
systemManager.LinkVariables("TIPC^PLC Project^PLC Project Instance^PlcTask Outputs^MAIN.bTestVar",
"TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Publisher)^MAIN.bTestVar^Outputs^VarData");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$systemManager.LinkVariables("TIPC^PLC Project^PLC Project Instance^PlcTask Outputs^MAIN.bTestVar",
"TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1 (Publisher)^MAIN.bTestVar^Outputs^VarData")
```

Please see the [Scripting Container](#) ► [182](#) sample "EtherCAT Automation Protocol" for more information.

Reading Publisher/Subscriber variable IDs

The following code snippet reads all variable IDs from a Publisher box and stores them in the List-Array "ids". This may also be used for Subscriber variables.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
List<uint> ids = new List<uint>();
ITcSmTreeItem pubBox = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation
Protocol)^Box 1 (Publisher)");
foreach(ITcSmTreeItem var in pubBox)
{
    if (var.ItemType == 35) // 35 = publisher variable, 36 = subscriber variable
    {
        string varStr = var.ProduceXml();
        XmlDocument varXml = new XmlDocument();
        varXml.LoadXml(varStr);
        XmlNode id = varXml.SelectSingleNode("//TreeItem/NvPubVarDef/NvId");
        ids.Add(Convert.ToUInt32(id.InnerXml));
    }
}
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$ids = New-Object System.Collections.ArrayList
$pubBox = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT Automation Protocol)^Box 1
(Publisher)")
foreach($var in $pubBox)
{
    if($var.ItemType -eq 35)
    {
        $varXml = [Xml]$var.ProduceXml()
        $id = $varXml.TreeItem.NvPubVarDef.NvId
        $ids.Add($id)
    }
}
```

4.3.6.3 Creating and handling Profinet devices

This article explains how to create and handle Profinet I/O devices via TwinCAT Automation Interface. The following topics are being discussed:

- Creating Profinet devices
- Adding Profinet boxes
- Adding Profinet modules
- Adding Profinet Sub-Modules

Creating Profinet devices

To create Profinet I/O devices (Controller/Device), the `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` method can be used. The `Sub Type` sets the actual type that should be added.

Name	Sub Type
Profinet Controller (RT)	113
Profinet Controller CCAT (RT)	140
Profinet Controller EL6631 (RT, EtherCAT)	119
Profinet Controller EL6632 (RT + IRT, EtherCAT)	126
Profinet Device (RT)	115
Profinet Device CCAT (RT)	142
Profinet Device CCAT (RT + IRT)	143
Profinet Device EL6631 (RT, EtherCAT)	118

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem io = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
ITcSmTreeItem profinetController = io.CreateChild("Profinet Controller", 113, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$io = $sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$profinetController = $io.CreateChild("Profinet Controller", 113, $null, $null)
```

Adding Profinet boxes

To create boxes below a Profinet device, the `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` may be used. The Sub Type depends on the box that should be added. The following table gives an overview about possible values:

Name	Sub Type
BK9102	9125
EK9300	9128
EL6631	9130

In addition some knowledge about the corresponding Profinet GSD file is required to use the `vlInfo` parameter properly. The `vlInfo` parameter is composed of the following syntax:
 PathToGSDfile#ModuleIdentNumber#BoxFlags#DAPNumber

The `ModuleIdentNumber` can be determined from within the GSD file, e.g. via the XML structure `<ProfileBody><ApplicationProcess><DeviceAccessPointList><DeviceAccessPointItem ModuleIdentNumber>`. The `ModuleIdentNumber` is usually unique. If not, the `DAPNumber` specifies the position in the `DeviceAccessPointList`.

The following `BoxFlags` are currently interpreted:

Name	Value	Description
GENERATE_NAME_FROM_PAB	0x0004	Profinet name will be generated via process image
GET_STATIONNAME	0x0400	Profinet name from TC config will be used (tree item name)
SET_NOT_IP_TO_OS	0x4000	CE-only: Profinet IP will not be registered in OS

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem profinetEL6631 = profinetController.CreateChild("EL6631", 9130, null, "C:\\TwinCAT\\3.1\\Config\\Io\\Profinet\\GSDML-V2.31-beckhoff-EL6631-20140508.xml#0x3");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$profinetEL6631 = $profinetController.CreateChild("EL6631", 9130, $null, "C:\\TwinCAT\\3.1\\Config\\Io\\Profinet\\GSDML-V2.31-beckhoff-EL6631-20140508.xml#0x3")
```

Adding Profinet modules

Profinet modules are created below the API node of a Profinet box. The API node is automatically created when adding a Profinet box to the TwinCAT configuration. To add Profinet modules the `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` method may be used. The `SubType` determines the position of the module within the `<ProfileBody><ApplicationProcess><ModuleList>` XML structure of the corresponding GSD file.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem profinetEL6631api = profinetEL6631.get_Child(1);
ITcSmTreeItem profinetModule1 = profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 30, null, null); // SubType 30 =
200 Byte In-Out
ITcSmTreeItem profinetModule2 = profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 12, null, null); // SubType 12 = 8
Byte In-Out
ITcSmTreeItem profinetModule3 = profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 8, null, null); // SubType 8 = 4
Byte Out
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$profinetEL6631api = $profinetEL6631.get_Child(1)
$profinetModule1 = $profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 30, $null, $null)
$profinetModule2 = $profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 12, $null, $null)
$profinetModule3 = $profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 8, $null, $null)
```

Adding Profinet Sub-Modules

Profinet Sub-Modules can be added below a so-called Profinet Modular Module. The handling is very similar to when adding regular Profinet modules. The Sub Type determines the position of the Sub-Module within the <ProfileBody><ApplicationProcess><ModuleList> XML structure of the corresponding GSD file.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem profinetModularModule = profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 98, null, null); // SubType
98 = Modular
ITcSmTreeItem modularModule1 = profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 12, null, null); // SubType 12
= 8 Byte In-Out
ITcSmTreeItem modularModule2 = profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 14, null, null); // SubType 14
= 16 Byte Out
ITcSmTreeItem modularModule3 = profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 31, null, null); // SubType 31
= 8 Word In
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$profinetModularModule = $profinetEL6631api.CreateChild("", 98, $null, $null)
$modularModule1 = $profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 12, $null, $null)
$modularModule2 = $profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 14, $null, $null)
$modularModule3 = $profinetModularModule.CreateChild("", 31, $null, $null)
```

4.3.6.4 Creating and handling Profibus devices

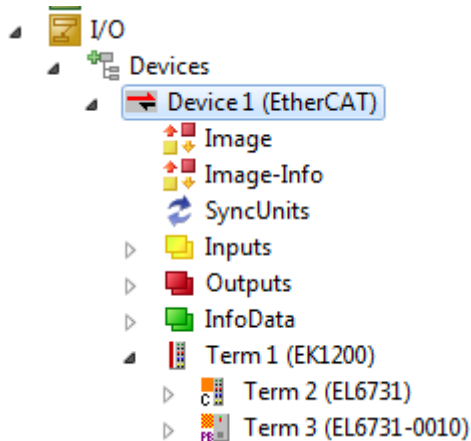
This article explains how to create and handle Profibus Master and Slave devices via TwinCAT Automation Interface. It consists of following main points:

- Creating and adding a Profibus Master
- Searching appropriate device (EL6731, FC310x, etc.) and configuring
- Creating and adding a Profibus Slave
- Searching appropriate Slave device (EL6731-0010, etc.) and configuring
- Changing fieldbus address

Creating and adding a Profibus Master

1. To create a Profibus Master device, open a new or an existing TwinCAT configuration

2. Scan all the devices. (These actions can also be performed via Automation Interface.)



3. Create a system manager object and navigate to devices

Code Snippet (C#):

```
project = solution.Projects.Item(1);
sysman = (ITcSysManager)project.Object;
ITcSmTreeItem io = (ITcSmTreeItem)sysman.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$project = $sln.Projects.Items(1)
$sysman = $project.Object
$io = $sysman.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
```

To add a Profibus master, use `ITcSmTreeItem.CreateChild` method.

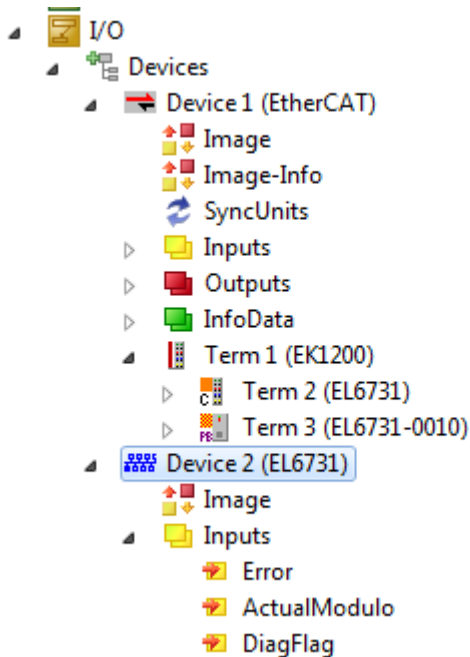
Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem5 profi_master = (ITcSmTreeItem5)io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6731)", 86, "", null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$profi_master = $io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6731) ", "86", "", $null)
```

For other Profibus Masters, enter the correct `ItemSubtype` listed here. This will add the new device as shown in the screenshot:



Searching and claiming a Profibus Master device from the list:

It is necessary to configure the newly added Profibus master, which is usually done in TwinCAT by pressing the search button and selecting the correct device from the list:

The screenshot shows the 'General' configuration tab for a Profibus Master device. The device name is 'Term 2 (EL6731)'. A 'Search...' button is highlighted in blue. Other settings include: Station No. (1), Baudrate (12M), Operation Mode (DP), Cycle Time (4000 µs), Estimated DP-Cycle (172 µs), and DP-Cycles/Task Cycle (1). There are also buttons for 'Identify Device...', 'Bus-Parameter (DP)...', 'Timing DP-Cycle...', and 'StartUp-/Fault-Settings...'. On the right side, there are buttons for 'Firmware Update...', 'Hardware Configuration...', 'Upload Configuration', and 'Verify Configuration', along with checkboxes for 'Flexible Process Image', 'Optimized Cycle', and 'Disable Dp-State Modification'.

This can be done via Automation Interface:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
string availableMaster = profi_master.ResourcesCount;
profi_master.ClaimResources(1);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$availableMaster = $profi_master.ResourcesCount
$profi_master.ClaimResources(1)
```

The `ITcSmTreeItem5:ResourcesCount` gives out the number of compatible Profibus master devices, and the `ITcSmTreeItem5:ClaimResources` takes the index of the CANOpen device to be configured as the master.

Creating and adding a Profibus slave

A Profibus slave can be added to the current configuration as shown below:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem5 profi_slave = (ITcSmTreeItem5)io.CreateChild("Device 3 (EL6731-0010)", 97, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$profi_slave = $io.CreateChild("Device 3 (EL6731-0010)", "97", "", $null)
```

Searching and claiming a Profibus slave

Similar to Profibus master, number of Profibus slaves can be published by following code:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
string availableSlaves = profi_slave.ResourcesCount;
profi_slave.ClaimResource(1);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$availableSlaves = $profi_slave.ResourcesCount
$profi_slave.ClaimResources(1)
```

The last line in code claims the EL6731-0010 as the Profibus slave, similar to the dialog box that appears in TwinCAT user interface.

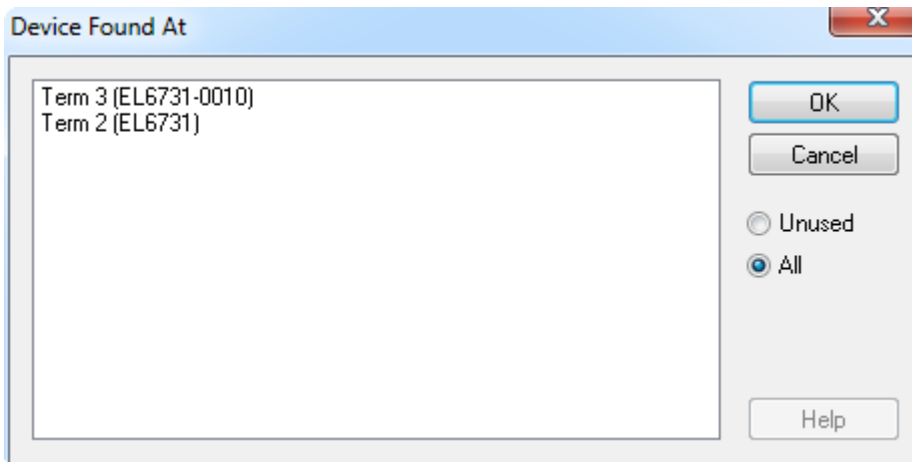


Fig. 2:

Changing fieldbus address

To change the the fieldbus address (station no.) of a profibus box in a configuration, an instance of the TwinCAT System Manager has to be created and the configuration has to be opened. The [LookupTreeItem \[▸ 122\]](#) method of the [ITcSysManager \[▸ 116\]](#) interface returns a [ITcSmTreeItem \[▸ 124\]](#) interface pointer implemented by the tree item referenced by its [pathname \[▸ 10\]](#). This interface contains a [ConsumeXml \[▸ 159\]](#) method of the tree item.

Procedure

The Procedure to create the [ITcSysManager \[▸ 116\]](#) interface (the '*sysMan*' instance here) is described in the chapter [Accessing TwinCAT Configurations. \[▸ 20\]](#) This interface has a [LookupTreeItem \[▸ 122\]](#) method that returns a [ITcSmTreeItem \[▸ 124\]](#) pointer to a specific tree item given by its [pathname \[▸ 10\]](#). To change the the fieldbus address (station no.) of a profibus box "*TIID^Device 1 (FC310x)^Box 1 (BK3100)*" to 44 the following code can be used:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem item = sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (FC310x)^Box 1 (BK3100)");
item.ConsumeXml("44");
```

Code Snippet (PowerShell):

```
$item = $sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIID^Device 1 (FC310x)^Box 1 (BK3100)")
$item.ConsumeXml("44")
```

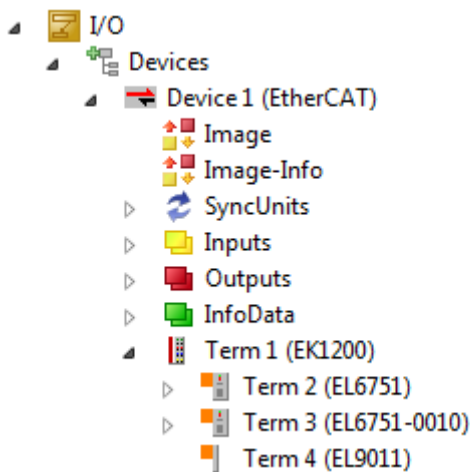
4.3.6.5 Creating and handling CANOpen devices

This article explains how to create and handle CANOpen Master and Slave devices via TwinCAT Automation Interface. It consists of following main points:

- Creating and adding a CANOpen Master
- Searching appropriate devices (EL6751, FC510x, etc.) and configuring
- Creating and adding CANOpen Slave
- Searching appropriate devices (EL6751-0010, etc.) and configuring
- Importing DBC files via Automation Interface

Creating and adding a CANOpen Master

To create a CANOpen Master device, open a new or an existing TwinCAT configuration, scan all the devices. Note that these actions can also be performed via Automation Interfaces



Create a system manager object, and navigate to devices.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
project = solution.Projects.Item(1);
sysman = (ITcSysManager)project.Object;
ITcSmTreeItem io = (ITcSmTreeItem)sysman.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$project = $sln.Projects.Items(1)
$sysman = $project.Object
$io = $sysman.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
```

To add a CANOpen Master, use ITcSmTreeItem.CreateChild method:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem5 can_master = (ITcSmTreeItem5)io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6751)", 87, "", null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$can_master = $io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6751)", "87", "", $null)
```

For other CANOpen master devices, enter the correct ItemSubtype listed [here](#) [133]. This will add the new device as shown in the screenshot:

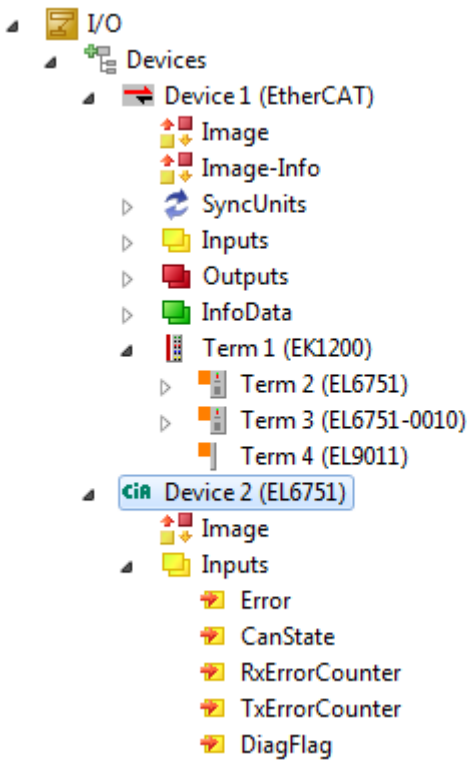


Fig. 3: CANOpen Master added

Searching and claiming a CANOpen Master device from the list:

It is necessary to configure the newly added CANOpen master, which is usually done in TwinCAT by pressing the search button and selecting the correct device from the list:

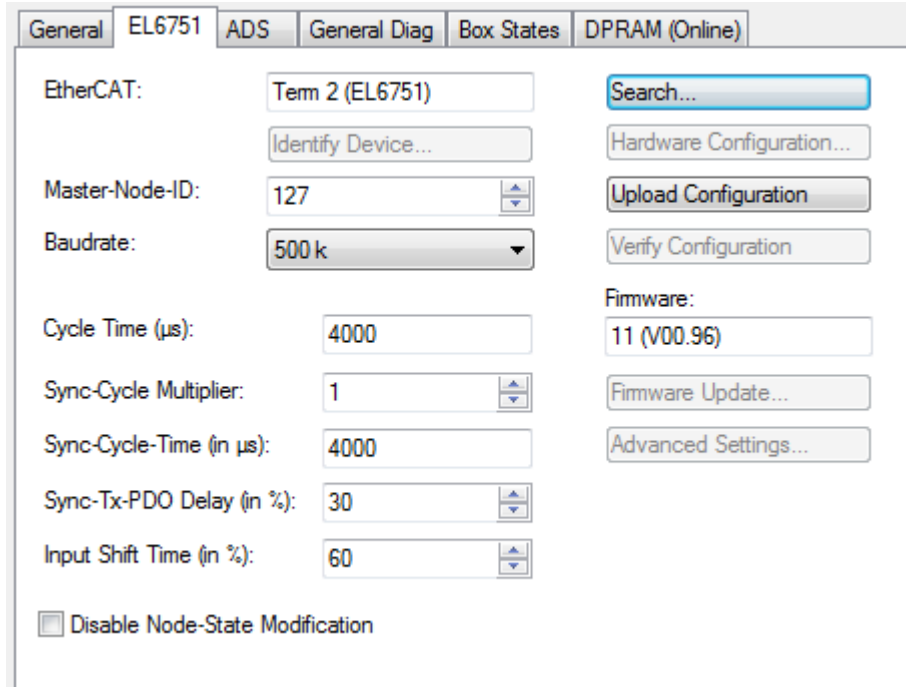


Fig. 4: CANOpen Master via Search button

This can be done via Automation Interface:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
string availableMaster = can_master.ResourceCount;
can_master.ClaimResources(1);
```


Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$availableMaster = $can_master.ResourceCount
$can_master.ClaimResources(1)
```

The ITcSmTreeItem5:ResourceCount gives out the number of compatible CANOpen master devices and the ITcSmTreeItem5:ClaimResources takes the index of the CANOpen device to be configured as the master.

Creating and adding a CANOpen Slave

A CANOpen slave can be added to the current configuration as shown below:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem5 can_slave = (ITcSmTreeItem5)io.CreateChild("Device 3 (EL6751-0010)", "98", null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$can_slave = $io.CreateChild("Device 3 (EL6751-0010)", "98", $null)
```

Searching and claiming a CANOpen slave

Similar to CANOpen Master, a list of CANOpen slaves can be published by following code:

Code Snippet (C#) :

```
string availableSlaves = can_slave.ResourceCount;
can_slave.Claimresources(1);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell) :

```
$availableSlaves = $can_slave.ResourceCount
$can_slave.Claimresources(1)
```

The last line of code, claims the EL6751-0010 as the CANOpen slave, similar to the dialog box that appears in TwinCAT user interface.

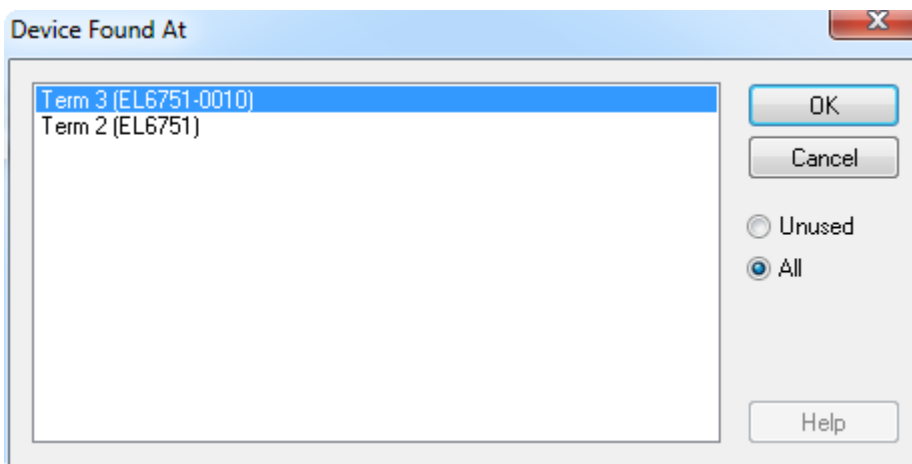


Fig. 5: CANOpen claim resources via dialog box

Importing DBC files via Automation Interface

Required Version: TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4018 or above

TwinCAT offers DBC file to be imported via dialog box as seen in the screenshot. On right clicking a CANOpen Master e.g. EL6751 and selecting "Import dbc-file", a dialog box prompts user to browse the DBC file. Upon clicking okay, a CANOpen configuration is loaded automatically.

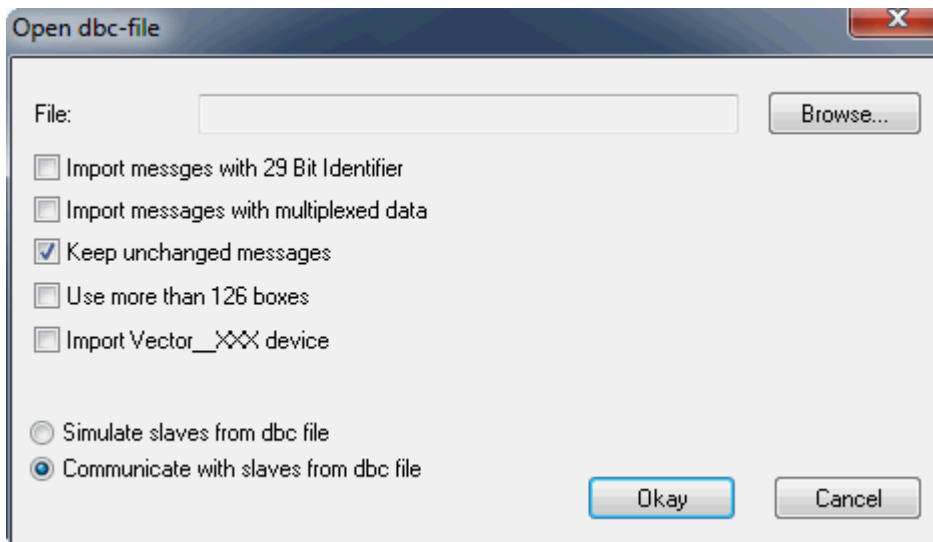


Fig. 6: CANOpen DBC file importing

Automation Interface also supports DBC file import. To do this, navigate to the CANOpen Master tree item and export the Xml file via `ITcSmTreeItem.ProduceXml()`. In the Xml file, add the path to the DBC file to be imported along with the additional properties that are part of the dialog box shown above.

```
<DeviceDef>
<AmsPort>28673</AmsPort>
<AmsNetId>172.17.251.109.2.1</AmsNetId>
<AddressInfo>
<Ecat>
<EtherCATDeviceId>0</EtherCATDeviceId>
</Ecat>
</AddressInfo>
<MaxBoxes>126</MaxBoxes>
<ScanBoxes>>false</ScanBoxes>
<CanOpenMaster>
<ImportDbcFile>
<FileName>c:\dbc_file_folder\dbc_file_to_be_imported.dbc</FileName>
<ImportExtendedMessages>>false</ImportExtendedMessages>
<ImportMultiplexedDataMessages>>false</ImportMultiplexedDataMessages>
<KeepUnchangedMessages>>true</KeepUnchangedMessages>
<ExtBoxesSupport>>false</ExtBoxesSupport>
<VectorXXXSupport>>false</VectorXXXSupport>
<CommunicateWithSlavesFromDbcFile>>true</CommunicateWithSlavesFromDbcFile>
</ImportDbcFile>
</CanOpenMaster>
<Fcxxxx>
<CalculateEquiTimes>0</CalculateEquiTimes>
<NodeId>127</NodeId>
<Baudrate>500 k</Baudrate>
<DisableNodeStateModification>>false</DisableNodeStateModification>
</Fcxxxx>
</DeviceDef>
```

Import the modified Xml file back into the TwinCAT configuration via `ITcSmTreeItem.ConsumeXml()`. The configuration will now be loaded below the CANOpen Master.

4.3.6.6 Creating and handling Devicenet devices

Just like any other I/O component, Devicenet devices may be added via the TwinCAT Automation Interface by using the `CreateChild()` method of the `ITcSmTreeItem` interface. The `SubType` specifies the device that should be added.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem io = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
ITcSmTreeItem devicenet1 = io.CreateChild("Device 1 (EL6752)", 88, null, null);
ITcSmTreeItem devicenet2 = io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6752-0010)", 99, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$io = $sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID")
$devicenet1 = $io.CreateChild("Device 1 (EL6752)", 88, $null, $null)
$devicenet2 = $io.CreateChild("Device 2 (EL6752-0010)", 99, $null, $null)
```

The following table gives an overview about all Devicenet I/O devices and their corresponding SubTypes. If a device should be missing, you can always find out the SubType yourself by following our documentation article about the [XML description of a tree item](#) [► 25].

Device	SubType
Devicenet Master FC52xx PCI	41
Devicenet Master EL6752 EtherCAT	88
Devicenet Slave FC52xx PCI	62
Devicenet Slave EL6752 EtherCAT	99
Devicenet Master CX1500-M520 PC104	73
Devicenet Slave CX1500-B520-PC104	74
Devicenet Monitor FC52xx PCI	59

Devicenet boxes can also be attached via CreateChild(). The SubType specifies the box that should be added.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem devicenet1box = devicenet1.CreateChild("Box 2 (EL6752-0010)", 5203, null, null);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$devicenet1box = $devicenet1.CreateChild("Box 2 (EL6752-0010)", 5203, $null, $null)
```

To add variables to a Devicenet box, simply use the following code snippet. The vInfo parameter specifies the data type of the variable.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem inputVars = devicenet1box.LookupChild("Inputs");
inputVars.CreateChild("TestVarInt", 0, null, "INT");
inputVars.CreateChild("TestVarBool", 0, null, "BOOL");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$inputVars = $devicenet1box.LookupChild("Inputs")
$inputVars.CreateChild("TestVarInt", 0, $null, "INT")
$inputVars.CreateChild("TestVarBool", 0, $null, "BOOL")
```

4.3.6.7 Creating and handling AX5000 devices

This documentation article describes how to create AX5000 devices and and modify their mailbox startup list as well as their power management, PDO and motor configuration. All of these settings can be modifies by using the [XML description](#) [► 25] of the AX5000 TreeItem. This article consists of the following chapters:

- Creating an AX5000 I/O device
- Overview XML description
- Parametrization and template generation
- Available tools and samples
- Mappings

Creating an AX5000 I/O device

AX5000 devices can be created by using the CreateChild() method. Please consult the documentation article [Creating and handling EtherCAT devices](#) [► 70] for more information.

Code snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem etherCatMaster = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master");
ITcSmTreeItem ax5000 = ethercatMaster.CreateChild("AX5000", 9099, "", "AX5203");
```

Code snippet (Powershell)

```
$etherCatMaster = $sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master")
$ax5000 = $ethercatMaster.CreateChild("AX5000", 9099, "", "AX5203")
```

Overview XML description

The XML description of an AX5000 device consists of the following parts (references to an XML node written as XPath).

Part	Description
/Treeltem/EtherCAT/Slave/Mailbox/SoE/InitCmds/	Mailbox startup list for drive, including the power management and motor configuration.
/Treeltem/EtherCAT/Slave/ProcessData/TxPdo	PDO configuration
/Treeltem/EtherCAT/Slave/ProcessData/RxPdo	

Mailbox startup list

The mailbox startup list therefore includes many different types of init commands, which are identified via their IDN. Please note that the IDN that is displayed in TwinCAT XAE does not equal the IDN in the XML description, which is why a mapping needs to happen. For example: The IDN P-0-0050 (Motor construction type) equals <IDN>32818</IDN> (0x800A hex). To make this mapping and the identification which init command belongs to which type (drive, motor, power management), the tools that are mentioned below already include a sample mapping for an AX5000_0000_0210.

● Import of startup list

i Please note that the startup list always needs to be imported as a whole (including **all** init commands). This is also true if only one or two init commands have been changed.

PDO configuration

The PDO configuration is straight-forward and consists of a TxPdo (Inputs) and RxPdo (Outputs) section. Each PDO entry is identified by its Index (hex) and contains a name, bit length and data type. The optional property "Fixed" describes whether this entry can be deleted via TwinCAT XAE.

● AdsInfo

i When creating a template, the <AdsInfo> section does not need to be present and can be removed from the template file because this information is generated by the TwinCAT XAE.

● Import of PDO configuration

i Please note that the PDO configuration always needs to be imported as a whole. This is also true if only one or two PDO entries have been changed.

Parametrization and template generation

It is recommended to create templates for different AX5000 configurations and also a different template for each channel (A and B) of a drive. These templates can then be assembled to a full AX5000 XML description, which can be imported either via the XAE menu entry "TwinCAT -> SelectedItem -> Import XML description" or via the Automation Interface method ConsumeXml().

In order to make the template generation process easier, several tools and samples for the Windows Powershell and C# are available for download. All of these tools are further described below.

Available tools and samples

The following table provides an overview about the available tools and samples that provide help with handling AX5000 configurations via Automation Interface.

Name	Language	Description
CreateTcloAx5000_Templates	Windows Powershell	Demonstrates how to generate template files out of a pre-configured AX5000 configuration.
CreateTcloAx5000_Config	Windows Powershell	Demonstrates how to create an AX5000 configuration based on template files.

Please note that these scripts do not use the TwinCAT Automation Interface API but instead provide help with the preparation of XML configuration files.

CreateTcloAx5000_Templates

This Windows Powershell script demonstrates how to generate template files out of a pre-configured AX5000 configuration. As a prerequisite, the AX5000 configuration needs to be exported to XML via the TwinCAT XAE menu entry "TwinCAT -> Selected Item -> Export XML description". This has been done demonstratively for two configuration (SelectedItem_ExportXml_Test1.xml and SelectedItem_ExportXml_Test2.xml). The path to one of these files is then configured in the local variable \$FullNameXmlExport within the Powershell script.

The script then loads the config file and subsequently extracts the XML configuration entries for the mailbox startup list, PDOs, power management and motor configuration and saves this information in separate template files (for each channel and for each type of configuration), which can later be re-added to a configuration by using the script "CreateTcloAx5000_Config".

CreateTcloAx5000_Config

This Windows Powershell scripts demonstrates how to build a full AX5000 configuration out of different template files. These template files provide the settings for the PDO configuration as well as the mailbox startup list with their init commands for power management and motor configuration. The script output is a full AX5000 XML description, which can be imported on a AX5000 TreetItem either by using the menu entry "TwinCAT -> SelectedItem -> Import XML description" or by using the Automation Interface method ConsumeXml().

At the beginngin of the script, the local variable \$FullNameConfigFile includes the path to the output file. Next, the script provides three different AX5000 configurations to choose from, each using a different template combination from the templates that were previously generated by using the script CreateTcloAx5000_Templates (see above). Depending on the chosen config, the script then builds the AX5000 XML description by importing the different configuration parts into their corresponding XML section.

Mappings

Process data mapping can be performed via regular Automation Interface mechanisms. Please consult the article [Creating and handling variable mappings \[► 41\]](#) for more information.

4.3.6.8 Scanning for devices and boxes

When creating a new configuration it is often necessary to align the TwinCAT XAE configuration to the actually available hardware. One option to fulfill this is to start a new TwinCAT XAE configuration from scratch and process the following steps:

- Creation of a new TwinCAT XAE configuration
- Setting the address of the target system

- Scan of the available devices
- Addition and parametrization of the devices to be used
- Scanning and insertion of boxes for each device

Procedure

The procedure to create the [ITcSysManager3](#) [► 116] interface (the 'systemManager' instance here) is described in the chapter [Accessing TwinCAT Configurations.](#) [► 20] This interface has a [LookupTreeItem](#) [► 122] method that returns a [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124] pointer to a specific tree item given by its [pathname](#) [► 10], in this case the shortcut "TIID" which references the I/O devices node.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSysManager3 systemManager = null;

public void ScanDevicesAndBoxes()
{
    systemManager.SetTargetNetId("1.2.3.4.5.6");
    ITcSmTreeItem ioDevicesItem = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID");
    string scannedXml = ioDevicesItem.ProduceXml(false);
    XmlDocument xmlDoc = new XmlDocument();
    xmlDoc.LoadXml(scannedXml);
    XmlNodeList xmlDeviceList = xmlDoc.SelectNodes("TreeItem/DeviceGrpDef/FoundDevices/Device");
    List<ITcSmTreeItem> devices = newList<ITcSmTreeItem>();
    int deviceCount = 0;
    foreach (XmlNode node in xmlDeviceList)
    {
        int itemSubType = int.Parse(node.SelectSingleNode("ItemSubType").InnerText);
        string typeName = node.SelectSingleNode("ItemSubTypeName").InnerText;
        XmlNode xmlAddress = node.SelectSingleNode("AddressInfo");
        ITcSmTreeItem device = ioDevicesItem.CreateChild(string.Format("Device_{0}", +
deviceCount), itemSubType, string.Empty, null);
        string xml = string.Format("<TreeItem><DeviceDef>{0}</DeviceDef></
TreeItem>", xmlAddress.OuterXml);
        device.ConsumeXml(xml);
        devices.Add(device);
    }
    foreach (ITcSmTreeItem device in devices)
    {
        string xml = "<TreeItem><DeviceDef><ScanBoxes>1</ScanBoxes></DeviceDef></TreeItem>";
        try
        {
            device.ConsumeXml(xml);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Warning: {0}", ex.Message);
        }
        foreach (ITcSmTreeItem box in device)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(box.Name);
        }
    }
}
```

4.3.6.9 Enabling and disabling I/O devices

To disable/enable a tree item in a configuration, an instance of the TwinCAT System Manager has to be created and the configuration has to be opened. The [LookupTreeItem](#) [► 122] method of the [ITcSysManager](#) [► 116] interface returns a [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124] interface pointer implemented by the tree item referenced by its [pathname](#) [► 10]. This interface contains a [Disabled](#) [► 124] property of the tree item.

Procedure

The Procedure to create the [ITcSysManager](#) [► 116] interface (the 'sysMan' instance here) is described in the chapter [Accessing TwinCAT Configurations.](#) [► 20] This interface has a [LookupTreeItem](#) [► 122] method that returns a [ITcSmTreeItem](#) [► 124] pointer to a specific tree item given by its [pathname](#) [► 10]. To disable/enable the tree item "TIID^EtherCAT Master" the following code snippets can be used.

Sample (CSharp):

```
ITcSmTreeItem item = sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master");
item.Disabled = DISABLED_STATE.SMDS_DISABLED;
```

Please note, that, for this sample, you need to add both a reference to "Microsoft Developer Environment 10.0" and "Beckhoff TcCatSysManager Library 1.1" to your project.

Sample (PowerShell):

```
$DISABLED_STATE = @{"SMDS_NOT_DISABLED" = "0"; "SMDS_DISABLED" = "1"}
$item = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master")
$item.Disabled = $DISABLED_STATE.SMDS_DISABLED
```

Sample (VBScript):

```
dim dte, sln, proj, sysMan
set dte = CreateObject("VisualStudio.DTE.10.0")
set sln = dte.Solution
call sln.Open("C:\SolutionFolder\MySolution1.sln")
set proj = sln.Projects(1)
set sysMan = proj.Object
set item = sysMan.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master")
item.Disabled = SMDS_DISABLED ' (oder item.Disabled = SMDS_NOT_DISABLED um Strukturelement zu aktivieren)
```

4.3.7 TcCOM

4.3.7.1 Creating and handling TcCOM modules

This chapter explains how to add existing TcCOM modules to a TwinCAT configuration and parameterize them. The following topics will be briefly covered in this chapter:

- Acquiring a reference to “TcCOM Objects” node
- Adding existing TcCOM modules
- Iterating through added TcCOM modules
- Setting CreateSymbol flag for parameters
- Setting CreateSymbol flag for Data Areas
- Setting Context (Tasks)
- Linking variables

Acquiring a reference to “TcCOM Objects” node

In a TwinCAT configuration, the “TcCOM Objects” node is located under “SYSTEM^TcCOM Objects”. Therefore you can acquire a reference to this node by using the method `ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem()` in the following way:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem tcComObjects = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC^TcCOM Objects");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tcComObjects = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRC^TcCOM Objects")
```

The code above assumes that there is already a systemManager objects present in your AI code.

Adding existing TcCOM modules

To add existing TcCOM modules to your TwinCAT configuration, these modules need to be detectable by TwinCAT. This can be achieved by either of the following ways:

- Copying TcCOM modules to folder `%TWINCAT3.XDIR%\CustomConfig\Modules\`
- Editing `%TWINCAT3.XDIR%\Config\IoTcModuleFolders.xml` to add a path to a folder of your choice and place the modules within that folder

Both ways will be sufficient to make the TcCOM modules detectable by TwinCAT.

A TcCOM module is being identified by its GUID or name:

- This GUID can be used to add a TcCOM module to a TwinCAT configuration via the `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` method. The GUID can be determined in TwinCAT XAE via the properties page of a TcCOM module.

Object	Context	Parameter (Init)	Parameter (Online)	Data Area	Interfaces	Block Diagram
Object Id:	<input type="text" value="0x01010020"/>		<input type="checkbox"/> Copy TMI to Target			
Object Name:	<input type="text" value="Object1 (TempContr)"/>					
Type Name:	<input type="text" value="TempContr"/>					
GUID:	<input type="text" value="8F5FDCFF-EE4B-4EE5-80B1-25EB23BD1B45"/>					
Class Id:	<input type="text" value="8F5FDCFF-EE4B-4EE5-80B1-25EB23BD1B45"/>					
Class Factory:	<input type="text" value="TempContr"/>					
Parent Id:	<input type="text" value="0x00000000"/>					
Init Sequence:	<input type="text" value="PSO"/>					

Alternatively, you can also determine the GUID via the TMC file of the TcCOM module.

```
<TcModuleClass>
  <Modules>
    <Module GUID="{8f5fdcff-ee4b-4ee5-80b1-25eb23bd1b45}">
      ...
    </Module>
  </Modules>
</TcModuleClass>
```

Let's assume that we already own a TcCOM module that is registered in and detectable by TwinCAT. We now would like to add this TcCOM module, which has the GUID {8F5FDCFF-EE4B-4EE5-80B1-25EB23BD1B45} to our TwinCAT configuration. This can be done by the following way:

Code Snippet (C#):

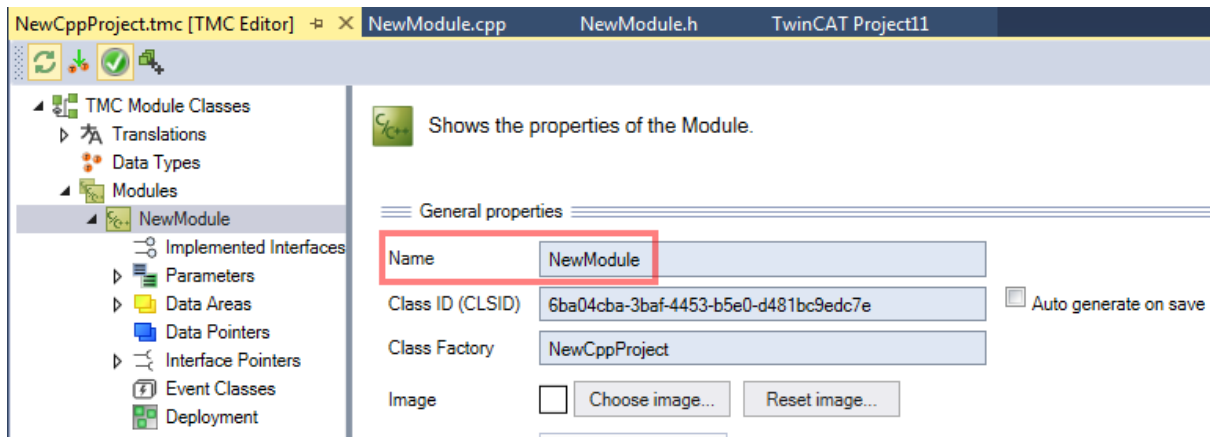
```
Dictionary<string,Guid> tcomModuleTable = new Dictionary<string,Guid>();
tcomModuleTable.Add("TempContr", Guid.Parse("{8f5fdcff-ee4b-4ee5-80b1-25eb23bd1b45}"));
ITcSmTreeItem tempController = tcComObjects.CreateChild("Test", 0, "",
tcomModuleTable["TempContr"]);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tcomModuleTable = @{}
$tcomModuleTable.Add("TempContr", "{8f5fdcff-ee4b-4ee5-80b1-25eb23bd1b45}")
$tempController = $tcComObjects.CreateChild("Test", 0, "", $tcomModuleTable["TempContr"])
```

Please note that the `vInfo` parameter of the method `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` contains the GUID of the TcCOM module which is used to identify the module in the list of all registered TcCOM modules in that system.

- This name can be used to add a TcCOM module to a TwinCAT configuration via the `ITcSmTreeItem::CreateChild()` method. The name can be determined in TwinCAT XAE via the TMC Editor.



- This can be done by the following way:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem tempController = tcComObjects.CreateChild("Test", 1, "", "NewModule");
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tempController = $tcComObjects.CreateChild("Test", 0, "", "NewModule")
```

Iterating through added TcCOM modules

To iterate through all added TcCOM module instances, you may use the ITcModuleManager2 interface. The following code snippet demonstrates how to use this interface.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcModuleManager2 moduleManager = (ITcModuleManager2)systemManager.GetModuleManager();
foreach (ITcModuleManager2 moduleInstance in moduleManager)
{
    string moduleType = moduleInstance.ModuleTypeName;
    string instanceName = moduleInstance.ModuleInstanceName;
    Guid classId = moduleInstance.ClassID;
    uint objId = moduleInstance.oid;
    uint parentObjId = moduleInstance.ParentOID;
}
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$moduleManager = $systemManager.GetModuleManager()
ForEach( $moduleInstance in $moduleManager )
{
    $moduleType = $moduleInstance.ModuleTypeName
    $instanceName = $moduleInstance.ModuleInstanceName
    $classId = $moduleInstance.ClassID
    $objId = $moduleInstance.oid
    $parentObjId = $moduleInstance.ParentOID
}
```

Please note that every module object can also be interpreted as an ITcSmTreeItem, therefore the following type cast would be valid:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem treeItem = moduleInstance As ITcSmTreeItem;
```

Please note: Powershell uses dynamic data types by default.

Setting CreateSymbol flag for parameters

The CreateSymbol (CS) flag for parameters of a TcCOM module can be set via its XML description. The following code snippet demonstrates how to activate the CS flag for the Parameter "CallBy".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
bool activateCS = true;
// First step: Read all Parameters of TcCOM module instance
string tempControllerXml = tempController.ProduceXml();
```

```

XmlDocument tempControllerDoc = new XmlDocument();
tempControllerDoc.LoadXml(tempControllerXml);
XmlNode sourceParameters = tempControllerDoc.SelectSingleNode("TreeItem/TcModuleInstance/Module/Parameters");

// Second step: Build target XML (for later ConsumeXml())
XmlDocument targetDoc = new XmlDocument();
XmlElement treeItemElement = targetDoc.CreateElement("TreeItem");
XmlElement moduleInstanceElement = targetDoc.CreateElement("TcModuleInstance");
XmlElement moduleElement = targetDoc.CreateElement("Module");
XmlElement parametersElement = (XmlElement) targetDoc.ImportNode(sourceParameters, true);
moduleElement.AppendChild(parametersElement);
moduleInstanceElement.AppendChild(moduleElement);
treeItemElement.AppendChild(moduleInstanceElement);
targetDoc.AppendChild(treeItemElement);

// Third step: Look for specific parameter (in this case "CallBy") and read its CreateSymbol attribute
XmlNode destModule = targetDoc.SelectSingleNode("TreeItem/TcModuleInstance/Module ");
XmlNode callByParameter = destParameters.SelectSingleNode("Parameters/Parameter[Name='CallBy']");
XmlAttribute createSymbol = callByParameter.Attributes["CreateSymbol"];

createSymbol.Value = "true";

// Fifth step: Write prepared XML to configuration via ConsumeXml()
string targetXml = targetDoc.OuterXml;
tempController.ConsumeXml(targetXml);

```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```

$tempControllerXml = [Xml]$tempController.ProduceXml()
$sourceParameters = $tempControllerXml.TreeItem.TcModuleInstance.Module.Parameters

[System.XML.XmlDocument] $targetDoc = New-Object System.XML.XmlDocument
[System.XML.XmlElement] $treeItemElement = $targetDoc.CreateElement("TreeItem")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $moduleInstanceElement = $targetDoc.CreateElement("TcModuleInstance")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $moduleElement = $targetDoc.CreateElement("Module")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $parametersElement = $targetDoc.ImportNode($sourceParameters, $true)
$moduleElement.AppendChild($parametersElement)
$moduleInstanceElement.AppendChild($moduleElement)
$treeItemElement.AppendChild($moduleInstanceElement)
$targetDoc.AppendChild($treeItemElement)

$destModule = $targetDoc.TreeItem.TcModuleInstance.Module
$callByParameter = $destModule.SelectSingleNode("Parameters/Parameter[Name='CallBy']")

$callByParameter.CreateSymbol = "true"

$targetXml = $targetDoc.OuterXml
$tempController.ConsumeXml($targetXml)

```

Setting CreateSymbol flag for Data Areas

The CreateSymbol (CS) flag for Data Areas of a TcCOM module can be set via its XML description. The following code snippet demonstrates how to activate the CS flag for the Data Area "Input". Please note that the procedure is pretty much the same as for parameters.

Code Snippet (C#):

```

bool activateCS = true;
// First step: Read all Data Areas of a TcCOM module instance
string tempControllerXml = tempController.ProduceXml();
XmlDocument tempControllerDoc = new XmlDocument();
tempControllerDoc.LoadXml(tempControllerXml);
XmlNode sourceDataAreas = tempControllerDoc.SelectSingleNode("TreeItem/TcModuleInstance/Module/DataAreas");

// Second step: Build target XML (for later ConsumeXml())
XmlDocument targetDoc = new XmlDocument();
XmlElement treeItem = targetDoc.CreateElement("TreeItem");
XmlElement moduleInstance = targetDoc.CreateElement("TcModuleInstance");
XmlElement module = targetDoc.CreateElement("Module");
XmlElement dataAreas = (XmlElement) targetDoc.ImportNode(sourceDataAreas, true);
module.AppendChild(dataAreas);
moduleInstance.AppendChild(module);
treeItem.AppendChild(moduleInstance);
targetDoc.AppendChild(treeItem);

```

```
// Third step: Look for specific Data Area (in this case "Input") and read its CreateSymbol attribute
XmlElement dataArea = (XmlElement)targetDoc.SelectSingleNode("TreeItem/TcModuleInstance/Module/DataAreas/DataArea[ContextId='0' and Name='Input']");
XmlNode dataAreaNo = dataArea.SelectSingleNode("AreaNo");
XmlAttribute createSymbol = dataAreaNo.Attributes["CreateSymbols"];

// Fourth step: Set CreateSymbol attribute to true if it exists. If not, create attribute and set its value
if (createSymbol != null)
string oldValue = createSymbol.Value;
else
{
createSymbol = targetDoc.CreateAttribute("CreateSymbols");
dataAreaNo.Attributes.Append(createSymbol);
}
createSymbol.Value = XmlConvert.ToString(activateCS);

// Fifth step: Write prepared XML to configuration via ConsumeXml()
string targetXml = targetDoc.OuterXml;
tempController.ConsumeXml(targetXml);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$tempControllerXml = [Xml]$tempController.ProduceXml()
$sourceDataAreas = $tempControllerXml.TreeItem.TcModuleInstance.Module.DataAreas

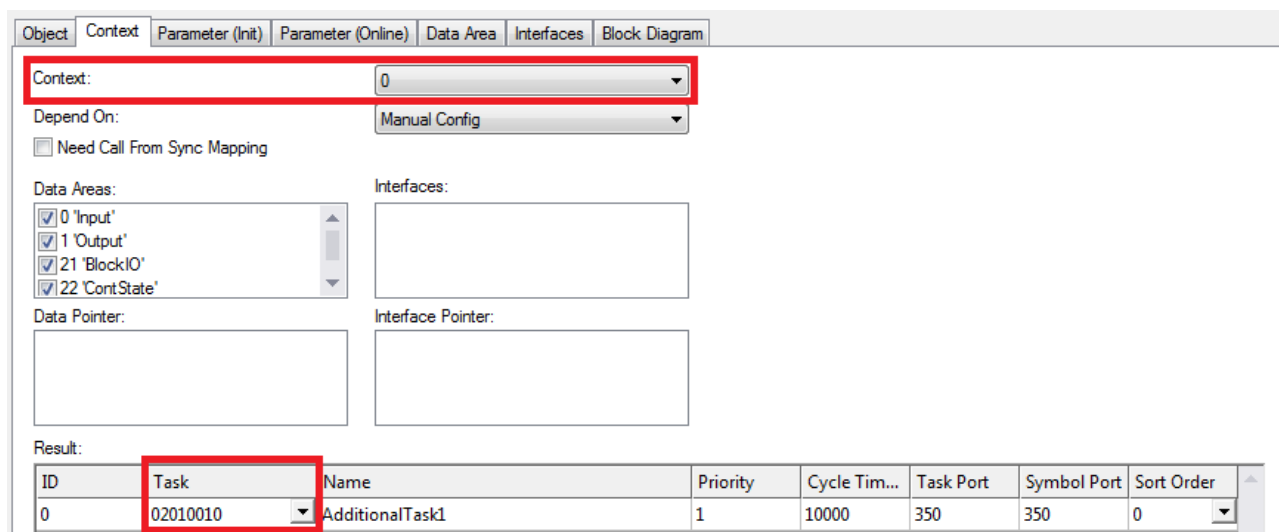
[System.XML.XmlDocument] $targetDoc = New-Object System.XML.XmlDocument
[System.XML.XmlElement] $treeItem = $targetDoc.CreateElement("TreeItem")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $moduleInstance = $targetDoc.CreateElement("TcModuleInstance")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $module = $targetDoc.CreateElement("Module")
[System.XML.XmlElement] $dataAreas = $targetDoc.ImportNode($sourceDataAreas, $true)
$module.AppendChild($dataAreas)
$moduleInstance.AppendChild($module)
$treeItem.AppendChild($moduleInstance)
$targetDoc.AppendChild($treeItem)

$destModule = $targetDoc.TreeItem.TcModuleInstance.Module
[System.XML.XmlElement] $dataArea = $destModule.SelectSingleNode("DataAreas/DataArea[ContextId='0' and Name='Input']")
$dataAreaNo = $dataArea.SelectSingleNode("AreaNo")
$dataAreaNo.CreateSymbols = "true"

// Fifth step: Write prepared XML to configuration via ConsumeXml()
$targetXml = $targetDoc.OuterXml
$tempController.ConsumeXml($targetXml)
```

Setting Context (Tasks)

Every TcCOM module instance needs to be run in a specific context (task). This can be done via the ITcModuleInstance2::SetModuleContext() method. This method awaits two parameters: ContextId and TaskObjectId. Both are equivalent to the corresponding parameters in TwinCAT XAE:



Please note that the TaskObjectId is shown in hex in TwinCAT XAE.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcModuleInstance2 tempControllerMi = (ITcModuleInstance2) tempController;
tempControllerMi.SetModuleContext(0, 33619984);
```

You can determine the TaskObjectId via the XML description of the corresponding task, for example:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem someTask = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIRT^SomeTask");
string someTaskXml = someTask.ProduceXml();
XmlDocument someTaskDoc = new XmlDocument();
someTaskDoc.LoadXml(someTaskXml);
XmlNode taskObjectIdNode = someTaskDoc.SelectSingleNode("TreeItem/ObjectId");
string taskObjectIdStr = taskObjectIdNode.InnerText;
uint taskObjectId = uint.Parse(taskObjectIdStr, NumberStyles.HexNumber);
```

Linking variables

Linking variables of a TcCOM module instance to PLC/IO or other TcCOM modules can be done by using regular Automation Interface mechanisms, e.g. ITcSysManager::LinkVariables().

4.3.8 C++**4.3.8.1 Creating and handling C++ projects and modules**

This chapter explains in-depth how to create, access and handle TwinCAT C++ projects. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about C++ projects
- Creating new C++ projects
- Creating new module within a C++ project
- Opening existing C++ projects
- Creating module instances
- Calling TMC Code Generator
- Calling Publish Modules command
- Setting C++ Project Properties
- Building project

General information about C++ projects

C++ projects are specified by their so-called project template, which are used by the "TwinCAT C++ Project Wizard". Inside a project multiple modules could be defined by module templates, which are used by the "TwinCAT Class Wizard".

TwinCAT-defined templates are documented in the Section C++ / Wizards.

The customer could define own templates, which is documented at the corresponding sub-section if C++ Section / Wizards.

Create C++ projects

To create a new C++ project using the Automation Interface, you must navigate to the C++ node and then execute the CreateChild() method with the appropriate template file as a parameter.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem cpp = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIXC");
ITcSmTreeItem cppProject = cpp.CreateChild("NewCppProject", 0, "", pathToTemplateFile);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$cpp = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIXC")
$newProject = $cpp.CreateChild("NewCppProject", 0, "", $pathToTemplateFile)
```

To instantiate a driver project, use "TcVersionedDriverWizard" as `pathToTemplateFile`.

Creating new module within a C++ project

Within a C++ project usually a TwinCAT Module Wizard is used to let the wizard create a module by a template.

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem cppModule = cppProject.CreateChild("NewModule", 1, "", pathToTemplateFile);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$cppModule = $cppProject.CreateChild("NewModule", 0, "", $pathToTemplateFile);
```

As example for instantiating a Cyclic IO module project please use "TcModuleCyclicCallerWizard" as `pathToTemplateFile`.

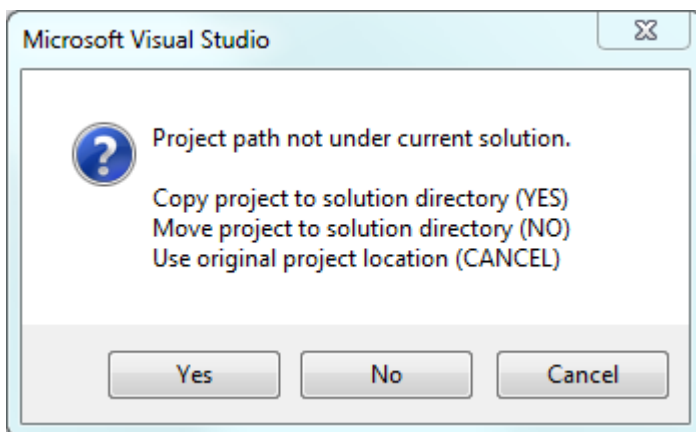
Opening existing C++ projects

To open an existing C++-Project via Automation Interface, you need to navigate to the C++ node and then execute the `CreateChild()` method with the path to the corresponding C++ project file as a parameter.

You can use three different values as `SubType`:

- 0: Copy project to solution directory
- 1: Move project to solution directory
- 2: Use original project location (specify "" as `NameOfProject` parameter)

Basically, these values represent the functionalities (Yes, No, Cancel) from the following `MessageBox` in TwinCAT XAE:



In place of the template file you need to use the path to the C++ project (to its `vcxproj` file) that needs to be added. As an alternative, you can also use a C++ project archive (`tczip` file).

Code snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem cpp = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIXC");
ITcSmTreeItem newProject = cpp.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 1, "", pathToProjectOrTczipFile);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$cpp = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIXC")
$newProject = $cpp.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 1, "", $pathToProjectOrTczipFile)
```

Please note that C++ projects can't be renamed, thus the original project name needs to be specified. (`cmp`. Renaming TwinCAT C++ projects)

Creating module instances

TcCOM Modules could be created at the System -> TcCOM Modules node. Please [see documentation there](#) [► 95].

The same procedure could also be applied to the C++ project node to add TcCOM instances at that place (\$newProject at the code on top of this page.).

Calling TMC Code Generator

TMC Code generator could be called to generate C++ code after changes at the TMC file of the C++ project.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string startTmcCodeGenerator = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<Methods>
<StartTmcCodeGenerator>
<Active>>true</Active>
</StartTmcCodeGenerator>
</Methods>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>";
cppProject.ConsumeXml (startTmcCodeGenerator);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$startTmcCodeGenerator = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<Methods>
<StartTmcCodeGenerator>
<Active>>true</Active>
</StartTmcCodeGenerator>
</Methods>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>"
$cppProject.ConsumeXml ($startTmcCodeGenerator)
```

Calling Publish Modules command

Publishing includes building the project for all platforms. The compiled module will be provided for Export like described in the Module-Handling section of C++.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string publishModules = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<Methods>
<PublishModules>
<Active>>true</Active>
</PublishModules>
</Methods>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>";
cppProject.ConsumeXml (publishModules);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$publishModules = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<Methods>
<PublishModules>
<Active>>true</Active>
</PublishModules>
</Methods>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>"
$cppProject.ConsumeXml ($publishModules)
```

Setting C++ Project Properties

C++ projects provide different options for the build and deployment process. These are settable by the Automation Interface.

Code snippet (C#):

```
string projProps = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<BootProjectEncryption>Target</BootProjectEncryption>
<TargetArchiveSettings>
<SaveProjectSources>>false</SaveProjectSources>
</TargetArchiveSettings>
<FileArchiveSettings>
<SaveProjectSources>>false</SaveProjectSources>
</FileArchiveSettings>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>";
cppProject.ConsumeXml(projProps);
```

Code snippet (Powershell):

```
$projProps = @"<?xml version=""1.0"" encoding=""UTF-16""?>
<TreeItem>
<CppProjectDef>
<BootProjectEncryption>Target</BootProjectEncryption>
<TargetArchiveSettings>
<SaveProjectSources>>false</SaveProjectSources>
</TargetArchiveSettings>
<FileArchiveSettings>
<SaveProjectSources>>false</SaveProjectSources>
</FileArchiveSettings>
</CppProjectDef>
</TreeItem>"
$cppProject.ConsumeXml($projProps)
```

For the `BootProjectEncryption` the values "None" and "Target" are valid. Both other settings are "false" and "true" values.

Building project

To build the project or solution you can use the corresponding classes and methods of the Visual Studio API, which are documented [here](#) [▶ 31].

4.3.9 Measurement

4.3.9.1 Creating and handling TwinCAT Measurement projects

The TwinCAT Automation Interface provides methods and properties to create and access TwinCAT Measurement projects. The following chapter explains how to solve some basic tasks with that kind of TwinCAT project and includes information about the following topics:

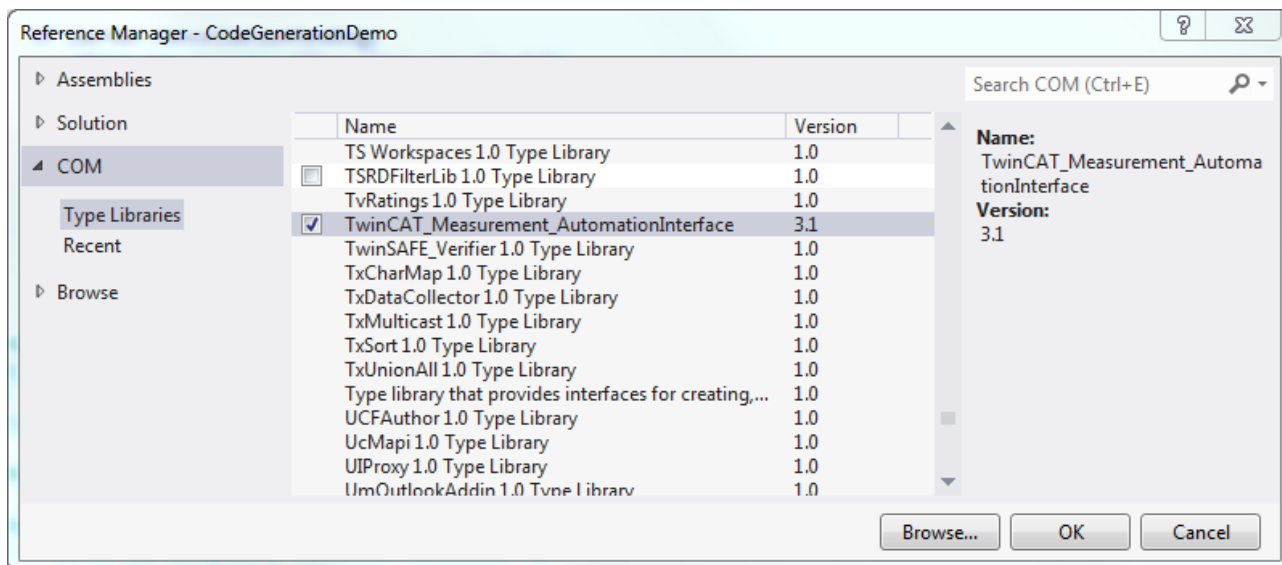
- Requirements
- Creating a TwinCAT Measurement project
- Creating a TwinCAT Scope configuration
- Creating, accessing and handling charts
- Creating, accessing and handling axes
- Creating, accessing and handling channels
- Starting and stopping records
- For more information about TwinCAT Measurement, please visit the corresponding webpage in our Information System.

Requirements

Integrating TwinCAT Measurement projects via Automation Interface is available since TwinCAT 3.1 Build 4013.

As a prerequisite to use the Scope AI functionalities, a reference to the following COM interfaces is required:

- TwinCAT Measurement Automation Interface (registered as COM library)
- TwinCAT Scope2 Communications (.NET assembly: C:\Windows\Microsoft.NET\assembly\GAC_MSIL\TwinCAT.Scope2.Communications\v4.0_3.1.3121.0_180016cd49e5e8c3\)



Creating a TwinCAT Measurement project

TwinCAT Measurement is a global "container" which can host one or more measurement projects, e.g. a TwinCAT Scope configuration. Similar to a regular TwinCAT configuration, each project is first-of-all described by a template-file. This template file is used when adding a new project to the solution, which can be achieved by calling the `AddFromTemplate()` method from the Visual Studio DTE object. Please note that this procedure is the same when adding a regular TwinCAT project. The following code snippet assumes that you have already acquired a DTE instance and created a Visual Studio solution, as demonstrated in our article about Accessing TwinCAT configurations. A reference to the DTE instance is stored in the object "dte".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
EnvDTE.Project scopeProject = dte.Solution.AddFromTemplate(template, destination, name);
```

[template]: The default template files are stored under C:\TwinCAT\Functions\TE130X-Scope-View\Templates\Projects\ and have the file type "tcmproj".

[destination]: Path where the new configuration should be stored on hard disk.

[name]: Name for the new configuration, as displayed in TwinCAT XAE.

Creating a TwinCAT Scope configuration

A TwinCAT Scope project stands for a recording configuration. This means that all elements inserted in that project are subject to the same recording settings. You can add a Scope project via Automation Interface by specifying the corresponding "TwinCAT Scope Project" template when adding a project using the `AddFromTemplate()` method, as described above.

Creating, accessing and handling charts

Several charts can exist in parallel in a Scope configuration. To add charts to an existing Scope project, simply use the `CreateChild()` method from the `IMeasurementScope` interface. The following code snippet assumes that a TwinCAT Measurement Project has already been created and a reference to this project is stored in the object "scopeProject".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
((IMeasurementScope) scopeProject.ProjectItems.Item(1).Object).ShowControl();
EnvDTE.ProjectItem newChart;
((IMeasurementScope) scopeProject.ProjectItems.Item(1).Object).CreateChild(out newChart);
IMeasurementScope newChartObj = (IMeasurementScope) newChart.Object;
newChartObj.ChangeName("NC Chart");
```

The object "newChartObj" now stores a reference to the newly added chart. At this point, please keep in mind that we still need the original object "newChart" for later purposes, e.g. to set chart properties.

In TwinCAT XAE, chart properties are set via the Visual Studio properties window. The object "newChart" gives access to these properties via its collection "Properties". The following code snippet iterates through all properties of a chart and sets the property "StackedYAxis" to "true".

Code Snippet (C#):

```
foreach (EnvDTE.Property prop in newChart.Properties)
{
    If (prop.Name = "StackedYAxis")
    prop.Value = true;
}
```

Creating, accessing and handling axes

The following code snippet demonstrates how to add axes.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
EnvDTE.ProjectItem newAxis;
newChartObj.CreateChild(out newAxis);
IMeasurementScope newAxisObj = (IMeasurementScope) newAxis.Object;
newAxisObj.ChangeName("Axis 1");
```

Creating, accessing and handling channels

A Scope channel describes a connection to a runtime symbol, e.g. a PLC variable. To add channels via Automation Interface, you can use the `CreateChild()` method of the `IMeasurementScope` interface.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
EnvDTE.ProjectItem newChannel;
newAxisObj.CreateChild(out newChannel);
IMeasurementScope newChannelObj = (IMeasurementScope) newChannel.Object;
newChannelObj.ChangeName("Signals.Rectangle");
```

The object "newChannelObj" now stores a reference to the newly added channel. At this point, please keep in mind that we still need the original object "newChannel" for later purposes, e.g. to set channel properties.

In TwinCAT XAE, channel properties are set via the Visual Studio properties window. The object "newChannel" gives access to these properties via its collection "Properties". The following code snippet iterates through all properties of a channel and sets multiple properties.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
foreach (EnvDTE.Property prop in newChannel.Properties)
{
    switch (prop.Name)
    {
        case "TargetPorts":
            prop.Value = "851";
            break;

        case "Symbolbased":
            prop.Value = true;
            break;
    }
}
```

```
case "SymbolDataType":
prop.Value = TwinCAT.Scope2.Communications.Scope2DataType.BIT;
break;

case "SymbolName":
prop.Value = "MAIN.bSignal";
break;

case "SampleState":
prop.Value = 1;
break;

case "LineWidth":
prop.Value = 3;
break;
}
}
```

As you can see, the `Scope2DataType` enum defines several data types that are supported when configuring a channel. At creation time of this document, this enum is defined as follows:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
public enum Scope2DataType
{
    VOID = 0,
    BIT = 1,
    INT16 = 2,
    INT32 = 3,
    INT64 = 4,
    INT8 = 5,
    REAL32 = 6,
    REAL64 = 7,
    UINT16 = 8,
    UINT32 = 9,
    UINT64 = 10,
    UINT8 = 11,
    BIT_ARRAY_8 = 12,
}
```

Please use a DLL explorer (e.g. Visual Studio) for a more recent and up-to-date list.

Starting and stopping records

To start/stop a configured Scope record, the corresponding methods from the `IMeasurementScope` interface can be used:

Code Snippet (C#):

```
((IMeasurementScope) scopeProject.ProjectItems.Item(1).Object).StartRecord()
((IMeasurementScope) scopeProject.ProjectItems.Item(1).Object).StopRecord();
```

4.3.9.2 Creating and handling TwinCAT Analytics projects

The TwinCAT Automation Interface provides methods and properties to create and access TwinCAT Measurement projects. The following chapter describes how some basic tasks can be solved with a TwinCAT project and includes information on the following topics:

- Requirements
- Creating a TwinCAT Measurement project
- Creating, accessing and handling a TwinCAT Analytics configuration
- Creating, accessing and handling networks
- Creating, accessing and handling functions
- Starting and stopping an analysis
- Further information on TwinCAT Measurement can be found on the corresponding webpage in our [information system](#).

Creating a TwinCAT Measurement project

TwinCAT Measurement is a global "container" that can host one or more measurement projects, e.g. a TwinCAT Scope configuration. Similar to a regular TwinCAT configuration, each project is first described with the aid of a template file. This template file is used when adding a new project to the solution, which can be done by calling the `AddFromTemplate()` method from the Visual Studio DTE object. Note that this procedure is the same when adding a regular TwinCAT project. The following code snippet assumes that you have already acquired a DTE instance and created a Visual Studio solution, as shown in our article about accessing TwinCAT configurations. A reference to the DTE instance is stored in the "dte" object.

```
EnvDTE.Project scopeProject = dte.Solution.AddFromTemplate(template, destination, name);
```

Creating, accessing and handling a TwinCAT Analytics configuration

A TwinCAT Analytics project represents an analysis configuration. This means that all elements inserted into the project are subject to the same analysis settings. You can add an analytics project via the Automation Interface by specifying the appropriate "TwinCAT Analytics Project" template when adding a project using the `AddFromTemplate()` method, as described above.

The `EnvDTE.Project` element thus added can then be mapped to the `IMeasurementAnalyticsProject` interface, which provides the following methods:

<code>int StartAnalytics();</code>	Starts the analysis process.
<code>int StopAnalytics();</code>	Stops the analysis process.
<code>int AddReferencedScope();</code>	Adds an instance of a TwinCAT Scope project to the solution and links the analytics elements. The TwinCAT Scope instance can be adapted with the <code>IMeasurementScope</code> interface via Automation Interface.
<code>int ChangeName(string name);</code>	Method of changing the project name.
<code>int ShowControl();</code>	Brings the Microsoft Visual Studio® Editor to the foreground to display the Analytics project.
<code>int CloseControl();</code>	Closes the editor.
<code>int GetAvailableModules(out Hashtable modules);</code>	Fills a hash table with the data from the analytics engine modules provided. The hash table might look like this: {02040109-0000-0000-f000-000000000064} "Min Max Avg 1Ch" {02040103-0000-0000-f000-000000000064} "Edge Counter OnOff 2Ch" {02040102-0000-0000-f000-000000000064} "Edge Counter OnOff 1Ch" {02040101-0000-0000-f000-000000000064} "Edge Counter 1Ch" The GUIDs are necessary for later generation of the analysis functions.
<code>int AddNetwork(out ProjectItem item, string name = "");</code>	Adds a network to the Analytics project and issues the instance of the <code>EnvDTE.ProjectItem</code> with which you can continue. The object <code>EnvDTE.ProjectItem.Object</code> can be mapped to the <code>IMeasurementAnalyticsNetwork</code> interface.

Creating, accessing and handling networks

A TwinCAT Analytics network represents the level at which function blocks are created, managed and visualized.

A network can contain multiple instances of different functions, as well as other networks as so-called sub-networks.

Each network is represented within a Microsoft Visual Studio® Editor instance, so that the internal docking mechanisms can be used to simultaneously represent different networks.

The `IMeasurementAnalyticsNetwork` interface defines the following methods:

<code>int ShowControl();</code>	Brings the Microsoft Visual Studio® Editor to the foreground to display the Analytics network.
<code>int CloseControl();</code>	Closes the editor.
<code>int AddFunction(out ProjectItem item, Guid guid, string name = "");</code>	<p>Adds an analysis function to the network.</p> <p>The function is determined by the corresponding GUID, which can be selected via the interface method <code>IMeasurementAnalyticsProject.GetAvailableModules(out Hashtable modules)</code>.</p> <p>The instance of <code>EnvDTE.ProjectItem.Object</code> can be mapped to the <code>IMeasurementAnalyticsFunction</code> interface.</p>
<code>int AddNetwork(out ProjectItem item, string name = "");</code>	The object <code>EnvDTE.ProjectItem.Object</code> can be mapped to the <code>IMeasurementAnalyticsNetwork</code> interface.
<code>int ChangeName(string name);</code>	Changes the name of the network.
<code>int AddNetworkTemplate(out ProjectItem item, string path);</code>	<p>Adds a network from a template. The template must be specified at file level.</p> <p>The object <code>EnvDTE.ProjectItem.Object</code> can be mapped to the <code>IMeasurementAnalyticsNetwork</code> interface.</p>

Creating, accessing and handling functions

A TwinCAT Analytics Function represents the level of the analysis function.

Each function has its own input and output variables as well as various configuration parameters.

The `IMeasurementAnalyticsFunction` interface defines the following methods:

<code>int ShowControl();</code>	Brings the Microsoft Visual Studio® Editor to the foreground to display the Analytics project.
<code>int CloseControl();</code>	Closes the editor.
<code>int ChangeName(string name);</code>	Changes the name of the function.
<code>int SetInputVariable(string input, int inputIndex);</code>	<p>Sets the input variable to the specified index of the function on the input string.</p> <p>The input string must be in XML format as an example from the TargetBrowser.</p> <p>TargetBrowserExportInfo</p> <p>To obtain the XML-formatted string, you can simply drag and drop the desired variable from the target browser into a text editor.</p> <p>Please note that the text editor must be started as an administrator if the target browser host (e.g. Visual Studio) has also been started as an administrator.</p>

No interface is required to adjust the parameters of the function.

To do this, you can simply search the `EnvDTE-Properties` list of the `EnvDTE.ProjectItem.Properties` object for the `EnvDTE.Property` and set its value.

4.3.9.3 Creating and handling Analytics Logger and Stream Helper

The TwinCAT Automation Interface provides methods and properties to create and access TwinCAT Analytics Logger and Stream Helper. All functions are described below with C# code samples.

- Creating and deleting a Data Logger
- Creating and deleting a stream helper
- Parameterizing an already created Data Logger
- Parameterizing streams
- Selecting symbols to be logged.

All these operations are related to the respective nodes of the Analytics Configuration, Analytics Data Logger, Streams and Stream Helpers in a TwinCAT XAE project.

4.3.9.3.1 Creating and deleting a DataLogger

```
EnvDTE.Solution solution = dte.Solution;
EnvDTE.Project xaeProject = null;

// Get xaeProject
...

ITcSysManager sysManager = (ITcSysManager)xaeProject.Object;

// Navigate to the Analytics Configuration Node
ITcSmTreeItem analyticsConfig = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIAN");

analyticsConfig.CreateChild("MyDataLoggerName", 1, null, null);

analyticsConfig.DeleteChild("MyDataLoggerName");
```

4.3.9.3.2 Creating and deleting a StreamHelper

```
EnvDTE.Solution solution = dte.Solution;
EnvDTE.Project xaeProject = null;

// Get xaeProject
...

ITcSysManager sysManager = (ITcSysManager)xaeProject.Object;

// Navigate to the Analytics Configuration Node
ITcSmTreeItem analyticsConfig = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIAN");

analyticsConfig.CreateChild("MyStreamHelperName", 0, null, null);

analyticsConfig.DeleteChild("MyStreamHelperName_Obj1 (StreamHelper)");
```

When deleting, note the addition "_Obj1 (StreamHelper)" appended to the name passed in CreateChild.

4.3.9.3.3 Parameterizing an already created DataLogger

```
EnvDTE.Solution solution = dte.Solution;
EnvDTE.Project xaeProject = null;

// Get xaeProject
...

ITcSysManager sysManager = (ITcSysManager)xaeProject.Object;

// Navigate to the Analytics DataLogger Node
ITcSmTreeItem dataLogger = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIAN^MyDataLoggerName");

string sXmlDoc = dataLogger.ProduceXml();
XmlDocument xmlDoc = new XmlDocument();
xmlDoc.LoadXml(sXmlDoc);

XmlElement elemSetParam = xmlDoc.CreateElement("SetParameter");
```

```
XmlAttribute attrParamName = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("name");
attrParamName.Value = "Data Format";

XmlAttribute attrParamValue = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("value");
attrParamValue.Value = "ANALYTICS_FORMAT_FILE";

elemSetParam.Attributes.Append(attrParamName);
elemSetParam.Attributes.Append(attrParamValue);
xmlDoc.DocumentElement.AppendChild(elemSetParam);

string sConsumeXml = xmlDoc.OuterXml;
dataLogger.ConsumeXml(sConsumeXml);
```

The code snippet shows the use of the Produce-Consume-XML mechanism, where the XML text describing the project node can be read, modified and written again, which can be followed by actions on the part of the System Manager. The imported XML text contains, among other things, a listing of the parameters with name and current value. The name corresponds exactly to the name of the parameter under the **Parameter (Init)** tab of the DataLogger project node. This also applies to the respective values.

4.3.9.3.4 Parameterizing a stream

```
EnvDTE.Solution solution = dte.Solution;
EnvDTE.Project xaeProject = null;

// Get xaeProject
...

ITcSysManager sysManager = (ITcSysManager)xaeProject.Object;

// Navigate to the Analytics DataLogger Node
ITcSmTreeItem stream = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIAN^MyDataLoggerName^PlcStream1");

string sXmlDoc = stream.ProduceXml();
XmlDocument xmlDoc = new XmlDocument();
xmlDoc.LoadXml(sXmlDoc);

XmlElement elemSetParam = xmlDoc.CreateElement("SetParameter");

XmlAttribute attrParamName = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("name");
attrParamName.Value = "Max ADS Buffer";

XmlAttribute attrParamValue = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("value");
attrParamValue.Value = "23";

elemSetParam.Attributes.Append(attrParamName);
elemSetParam.Attributes.Append(attrParamValue);
xmlDoc.DocumentElement.AppendChild(elemSetParam);

string sConsumeXml = xmlDoc.OuterXml;
dataLogger.ConsumeXml(sConsumeXml);
```

The code snippet shows the use of the Produce-Consume-XML mechanism, where the XML text describing the project node can be read, modified and written again, which can be followed by actions on the part of the System Manager. The imported XML text contains, among other things, a listing of the parameters with name and current value. The name corresponds exactly to the name of the parameter under the **Data Handling** tab of the stream project node. This also applies to the respective values.

4.3.9.3.5 Selecting symbols

```
EnvDTE.Solution solution = dte.Solution;
EnvDTE.Project xaeProject = null;

// Get xaeProject
...

ITcSysManager sysManager = (ITcSysManager)xaeProject.Object;

// Navigate to the Analytics DataLogger Node
ITcSmTreeItem stream = sysManager.LookupTreeItem("TIAN^MyDataLoggerName^PlcStream1");

string sXmlDoc = stream.ProduceXml();
XmlDocument xmlDoc = new XmlDocument();
xmlDoc.LoadXml(sXmlDoc);
```

```
XmlElement elemSetSymbol = xmlDoc.CreateElement("SetSymbol");

XmlAttribute attrSymbolName = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("name");
attrSymbolName.Value = "MAIN.stTestStructSimple.nMember1";

XmlAttribute attrEnable = xmlDoc.CreateAttribute("value");
attrEnable.Value = "true";

elemSetSymbol.Attributes.Append(attrSymbolName);
elemSetSymbol.Attributes.Append(attrEnable);

xmlDoc.DocumentElement.AppendChild(elemSetSymbol);

string sConsumeXml = xmlDoc.OuterXml;
stream.ConsumeXml(sConsumeXml);
```

4.3.10 Motion

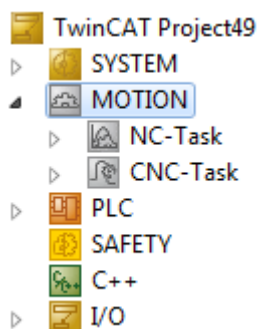
4.3.10.1 Creating and handling Motion projects

This chapter explains in-depth how to create and handle Motion projects. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about TwinCAT 3 Motion
- Creating a NC-Task
- Creating axes
- Parameterize axes

General information about TwinCAT Motion

TwinCAT 3 Motion consists of the following three components: NC-I, NC-PTP and CNC. It is therefore an assembly of function groups used for the control and regulation of axes or of synchronised axis groups. For more information about TwinCAT Motion please see the [TwinCAT 3 Motion documentation](#).



Creating a NC-Task

The first step to create a TwinCAT 3 Motion project is to create a so-called NC-Task. In TwinCAT Automation Interface, you can create this task simply by calling the method [ITcSmTreeItem \[P 124\]::CreateChild\(\) \[P 160\]](#) and using the SubType parameter 1, as the following code snippet shows.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem ncConfig = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC");
ncConfig.CreateChild("NC-Task", 1);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$ncConfig = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC")
$ncConfig.CreateChild("NC-Task", 1)
```

Creating axes

As the NC-Task does not contain any axes by default, you need to add them, again by using the `CreateChild()` method - this time on a reference to the Axes node below the NC-Task.

Code Snippet (C#):

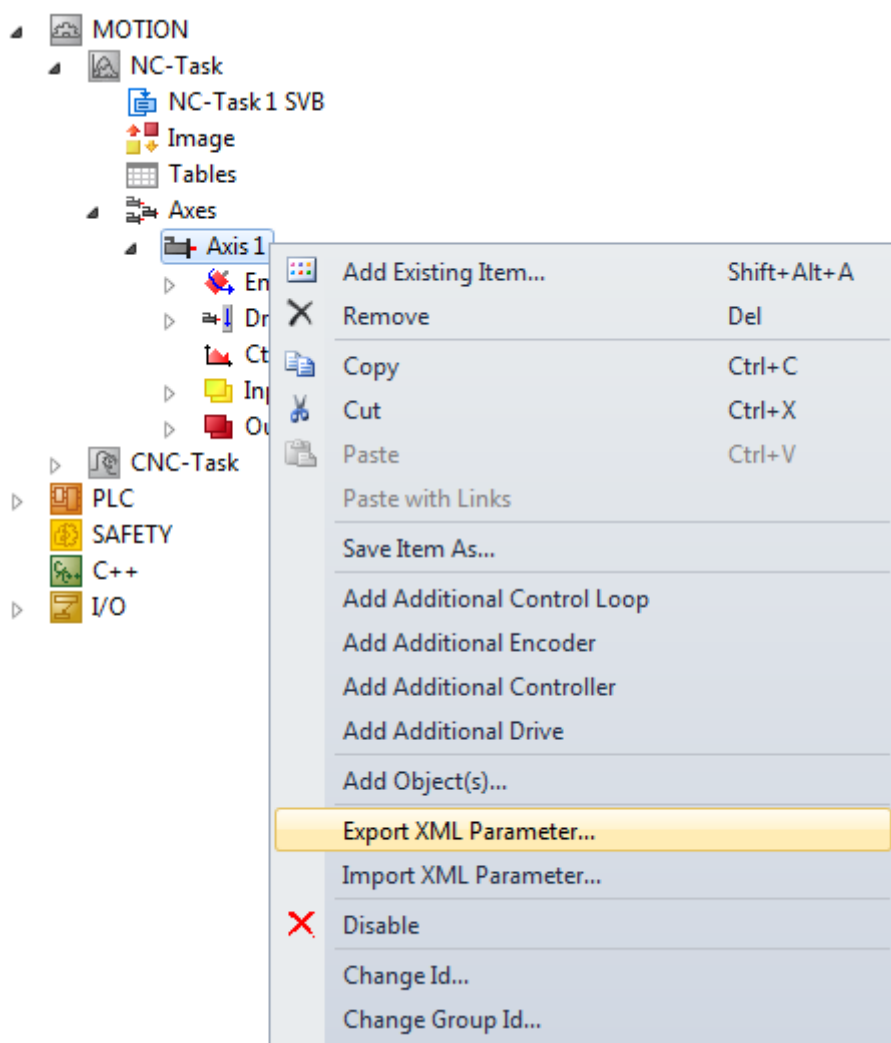
```
ITcSmTreeItem axes = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes");
axes.CreateChild("Axis 1", 1);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$axes = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes")
$axes.CreateChild("Axis 1", 1)
```

Parameterize axes

Axes can be parameterized via their [XML description](#) [► 25]. To get a sample XML description, you could add an axis manually in TwinCAT XAE and use the corresponding entry from the context menu or add the axis via Automation Interface and use the `ITcSmTreeItem` [► 124]::`ProduceXml()` [► 158] method to get it.



Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem axis = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes^Axis 1");
string xmlDescription = axis.ProduceXml();
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$axis = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes^Axis 1")
$xmlDescription = $axis.ProduceXml()
```


You can modify this XML description to your needs and then import it again via the method `ITcSmTreeItem [▶ 124]::ConsumeXml()` [▶ 159] to parameterize your axis.

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem axis = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes^Axis 1");
axis.ConsumeXml(xmlDescription);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$axis = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TINC^NC-Task^Axes^Axis 1")
$axis.ConsumeXml($xmlDescription)
```

4.3.11 Safety

4.3.11.1 Creating and handling Safety projects

This chapter explains in-depth how to create, access and handle Safety projects. The following list shows all chapters in this article:

- General information about Safety projects
- Opening existing Safety projects

General information about Safety projects

- The TwinCAT Automation Interface allows to import existing TwinCAT Safety projects into a TwinCAT configuration. For this purpose, users can either use the corresponding *.splcproj file or the container format *.tfzip as a source template.

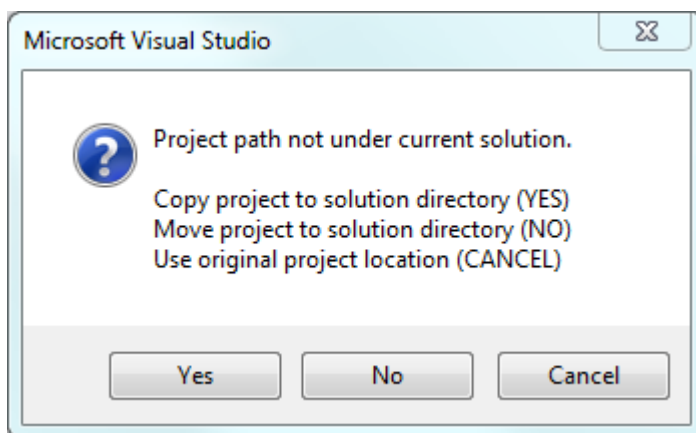
Opening existing Safety projects

To open an existing Safety project via Automation Interface, you need to navigate to the Safety node and then execute the `CreateChild()` method with the path to the corresponding, existing Safety project file as a parameter.

You can use three different values as `SubType`:

- 0: Copy project to solution directory
- 1: Move project to solution directory
- 2: Use original project location (when used, please use "" as project name parameter)

Basically, these values represent the functionalities (Yes, No, Cancel) from the following `MessageBox` in TwinCAT XAE:



You can either use the path to the Safety project (to its *.splcproj file) that needs to be added or you can also use a Safety project archive (*.tfzip).

Code Snippet (C#):

```
ITcSmTreeItem safety = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TISC");  
ITcSmTreeItem newProject = safety.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 0, null, pathToProjectOrTfzipFile);
```

Code Snippet (Powershell):

```
$safety = $systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TISC")  
$newProject = $safety.CreateChild("NameOfProject", 0, "", pathToProjectOrTfzipFile)
```

5 API

5.1 Reference

This chapter contains a documentation of all classes and methods of the TwinCAT Automation Interface. The provided interfaces can be divided into different "levels" in which the higher level interfaces represent the primary interfaces and therefore the basic interaction with the Automation Interface. Please note that this differentiation comes only from a logical point-of-view, to get a better understanding about which interfaces are most important and which interfaces are of secondary importance.

Level 1 interfaces

As mentioned in our [introduction \[► 10\]](#), there are only two main interfaces which are being used for navigating and referencing tree items in TwinCAT configuration.

Main class	Description	Available since
ITcSysManager [► 116]	Base class to create and parameterize a TwinCAT configuration	TwinCAT 2.11
ITcSmTreeItem [► 124]	Represents a tree item within a TwinCAT configuration	TwinCAT 2.11

Level 2 interfaces

These interfaces are considered as "helper classes" which are always used together with level 1 classes, for example to cast an ITcSmTreeItem object into a more specific type of tree item, for example a POU (ITcPlcPou) or a linked task (ITcTaskReference).

Helper class	Description	Available since
ITcPlcLibraryManager [► 171]	Defines methods and properties for PLC library management	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcPou [► 165]	Defines methods and properties to handle PLC POU's	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcDeclaration [► 166]	Defines methods to read/write the declaration area of a PLC POU	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcImplementation [► 167]	Defines methods to read/write the implementation area of a PLC POU	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcProject [► 164]	Defines methods and properties regarding a PLC project, e.g. setting the project as a boot project	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcIECProject [► 168]	Defines methods needed to import/export PLC projects in PLCopen XML and also install them as a PLC library	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcTaskReference [► 181]	Defines methods and properties to link the PLC project to a task	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcLibrary [► 177]	Helper class which represents a single PLC library	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcLibraries [► 178]	Helper class which represents a collection of PLC libraries	TwinCAT 3.1
ITCPlcReferences [► 177]	Helper class which represents a collection of ITcPlcLibRef objects (and therefore references in a PLC project)	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcLibRef [► 178]	Helper class which represents a base class for ITcPlcLibrary and ITcPlcPlaceholderRef objects	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcPlaceholderRef [► 179]	Helper class which represents a single PLC placeholder	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcLibRepository [► 179]	Helper class which represents a single PLC library repository	TwinCAT 3.1
ITcPlcLibRepositories [► 180]	Helper class which represents a collection of PLC library repositories	TwinCAT 3.1

5.2 ITcSysManager

5.2.1 ITcSysManager

ITcSysManager is the main interface of the TwinCAT Automation Interface. This interface allows basic operations to configure TwinCAT 3 XAE and consists of several methods for doing so. Over the years, the ITcSysManager interface has been extended with more functionalities to give customers a better way to access all Automation Interface features. However, due to restrictions in the COM object model, these features needed to be added as separate interfaces to the Automation Interface. Therefore, each time a new set of features was added, these features were assembled in a new interface which was named ITcSysManagerX, where X is a number which is incremented each time a new interface was added. The following tables explain which methods are part of the ITcSysManager interface and which have been added to each new "feature-set" interface.

Methods

ITcSysManager methods	Description	Available since
NewConfiguration [▶ 118]	Generates a new configuration	TwinCAT 2.11
OpenConfiguration [▶ 118]	Loads a prior created configuration file (WSM file)	TwinCAT 2.11
SaveConfiguration [▶ 119]	Saves the configuration in a file with the given name or with the current name	TwinCAT 2.11
ActivateConfiguration [▶ 119]	Activates the configuration (same as "Save To Registry")	TwinCAT 2.11
LookupTreeltem [▶ 122]	Looks up to a configuration item (item in the tree) by name and returns a ITcSmTreeltem [▶ 124] interface	TwinCAT 2.11
StartRestartTwinCAT [▶ 119]	Starts or Restarts the TwinCAT System	TwinCAT 2.11
IsTwinCATStarted [▶ 119]	Evaluates if the TwinCAT System is running	TwinCAT 2.11
LinkVariables [▶ 120]	Links two variables given by names	TwinCAT 2.11
UnlinkVariables [▶ 120]	Clears the link between two variables given by names or all links from one variable.	TwinCAT 2.11

ITcSysManager2 methods	Description	Available since
SetTargetNetId [▶ 121]	Set the target NetId of the currently opened TwinCAT configuration.	TwinCAT 2.11
GetTargetNetId [▶ 121]	Gets the target NetId of the currently opened TwinCAT configuration.	TwinCAT 2.11
GetLastErrorMessages [▶ 121]	Get the last error messages which occurred in the TwinCAT subsystem.	TwinCAT 2.11

ITcSysManager3 methods	Description	Available since
LookupTreeltemById [▶ 123]	Looks for a configuration tree item with the specified Item id.	TwinCAT 2.11
ProduceMappingInfo [▶ 123]	Produces a Xml-Description of the actual configuration mappings.	TwinCAT 3.1
ClearMappingInfo	Clears the mapping info.	TwinCAT 2.11

Comments

The ITcSysManager interface contains two methods used for navigating within TwinCAT XAE: [ITcSysManager::LookupTreeltem \[▶ 122\]](#) and [ITcSysManager3::LookupTreeltemById \[▶ 123\]](#). A detailed explanation of browsing TwinCAT XAE can be found in the chapter [Treeltem Browsing Models \[▶ 23\]](#).

Warning: The three methods [ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration \[▶ 118\]](#), [ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration \[▶ 118\]](#) and [ITcSysManager::SaveConfiguration \[▶ 119\]](#) are only available in [Compatibility Mode \[▶ 20\]](#). Calling them in standard mode will throw an E_NOTSUPPORTED Exception.

The **ITcSysmanager** and the [ITcSmTreeltem \[▶ 124\]](#) interface allows full access to a TwinCAT configuration. In the How to... section of this documentation there is a long (but incomplete) list of samples how to manipulate a TwinCAT configuration automatically.

Version information

Requirements

Required TwinCAT version

This interface is supported in TwinCAT 2.11 and above

5.2.2 ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration

The NewConfiguration() method generates a new TwinCAT configuration file.

```
HRESULT NewConfiguration();
```

Return Values

S_OK	Function has returned a value.
E_ACCESSDENIED	The actual document is locked in the System Manager-Instance. This is if at least one reference to the system manager-object or one of the Tree Items is opened.
E_FAIL	Function failed.

Comments

Warning: The three methods [ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration \[► 118\]](#), [ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration \[► 118\]](#) and [ITcsSysManager::SaveConfiguration \[► 119\]](#) are only available in [Compatibility Mode \[► 20\]](#). Calling them in standard mode will throw an E_NOTSUPPORTED Exception.

5.2.3 ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration

The OpenConfiguration() method loads a previously created TwinCAT configuration file.

```
HRESULT OpenConfiguration(BSTRbstrFile);
```

Parameters

bstrFile	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] contains the file path of the configuration file that should be loaded or an empty string if a new configuration should generated. The currently running configuration of a target device may also be read by using "CURRENTCONFIG".
----------	--

Return Values

S_OK	Function has returned a value.
E_ACCESSDENIED	The actual document is locked in the system manager-instance. This is if at least one reference to the system manager-object or one of the Tree Items is opened.
E_INVALIDARG	The path doesn't point to a valid configfile.

Comments

Warning: The three methods [ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration \[► 118\]](#), [ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration \[► 118\]](#) and [ITcsSysManager::SaveConfiguration \[► 119\]](#) are only available in [Compatibility Mode \[► 20\]](#). Calling them in standard mode will throw an E_NOTSUPPORTED Exception.

5.2.4 ITcSysManager::SaveConfiguration

The SaveConfiguration() method saves a TwinCAT configuration in a file with the specified name.

```
HRESULT SaveConfiguration(BSTRbstrFile);
```

Parameters

bstrFile	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] contains the path, where the config file should be saved. When <i>bstrFile</i> is an empty character string, the actual file name is used.
----------	--

Return Values

S_OK	Function has returned a value.
E_INVALIDARG	The file path is invalid.

Comments

Warning: The three methods [ITcSysManager::NewConfiguration \[► 118\]](#), [ITcSysManager::OpenConfiguration \[► 118\]](#) and [ITcSysManager::SaveConfiguration \[► 119\]](#) are only available in [Compatibility Mode \[► 20\]](#). Calling them in standard mode will throw an E_NOTSUPPORTED Exception.

5.2.5 ITcSysManager::ActivateConfiguration

The ActivateConfiguration() method activates the TwinCAT configuration (same as "Save To Registry"). A following start or restart of the TwinCAT system must be performed to activate the configuration physically.

```
HRESULT ActivateConfiguration();
```

Return Values

S_OK	Function has returned a value.
E_FAIL	The function failed.

5.2.6 ITcSysManager::IsTwinCATStarted

The IsTwinCATStarted() method evaluates if the TwinCAT System is running.

```
HRESULT IsTwinCATStarted(VARIANT_BOOL*pStarted);
```

Parameters

pStarted	[out, retval] points to the storage location of the boolean value, which contains the result.
----------	---

Return Values

S_OK	Function returned a value.
------	----------------------------

5.2.7 ITcSysManager::StartRestartTwinCAT

The StartRestartTwinCAT() method starts or restarts the TwinCAT System. If TwinCAT is already started, the function performs a restart, if TwinCAT is stopped it performs a start.

```
HRESULT StartRestartTwinCAT();
```

Return Values

Requirements

S_OK	Function has returned a value.
E_FAIL	TwinCAT couldn't be started.

5.2.8 ITcSysManager::LinkVariables

The `LinkVariables()` method links two variables, which are specified by their names. The two variables represented by their tree path name will be linked. The path names must have the same syntax as described in [ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem](#) [▶ 122]. The same shortcuts can be used.

```
HRESULT LinkVariables(BSTRbstrV1, BSTRbstrV2, longoffs1, longoffs2, longsize);
```

Parameters

<code>bstrV1</code>	[in] path name of the first variable. The full path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab.
<code>bstrV2</code>	[in] path name of the second variable. The full path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab.
<code>offs1</code>	[in, defaultvalue(0)] bit offset of the first variable (used if the two variables have different sizes or not the whole variable should be linked).
<code>offs2</code>	[in, defaultvalue(0)] bit offset of the second variable.
<code>size</code>	[in, defaultvalue(0)] bit count how many bits should linked. If <code>size</code> is 0 the minimum of the variable size of variable one and two is used.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	one or both of the path name(s) does not qualify an existing tree item.
TSM_E_INVALIDITEMTYPE (0x98510002)	one or both of the tree item(s) is not a variable.
TSM_E_MISMATCHINGITEMS (0x98510004)	the two variables cannot linked together. May be you have tried to link an output of one task with an output of another task or an output of a task with an input of a device or to variables of the same owner.
E_INVALIDARG	the values of <code>offs1</code> , <code>offs2</code> and/or <code>size</code> does not fit to the variables.

5.2.9 ITcSysManager::UnlinkVariables

The `UnlinkVariables()` method unlinks two variables, which are specified by their names, or clears all links from the first variable if the name `bstrV2` of the second variable is empty. The two variables represented by their tree path name will be unlinked. The path names must have the same syntax as described in [ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem](#) [▶ 122]. The same shortcuts can be used.

```
HRESULT UnlinkVariables(BSTRbstrV1, BSTRbstrV2);
```


Parameters

bstrV1	[in] path name of the first variable. The full path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab.
bstrV2	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] path name of the second variable. If set the full path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
S_FALSE	the two variables have no link between them.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	one or both of the path name(s) does not qualify an existing tree item.
TSM_E_INVALIDITEMTYPE (0x98510002)	one or both of the tree item(s) is not a variable.
TSM_E_CORRUPTEDLINK (0x98510005)	the two variables cannot unlinked.

Comments

If *bstrV2* is an empty string the function clears all links of variable given by *bstrV1*. If *bstrV2* is not empty only an existing link between both variables will be deleted.

5.2.10 ITcSysManager2::GetTargetNetId

The GetTargetNetId() method returns the NetId of the current TwinCAT system.

```
HRESULT GetTargetNetId();
```

Parameters

None

Return Values

STRING	returns target's NetId
--------	------------------------

5.2.11 ITcSysManager2::SetTargetNetId

The SetTargetNetId() method sets the NetId of the current TwinCAT system.

```
HRESULT SetTargetNetId(STRING netId);
```

Parameters

netId	represents the target's NetId.
-------	--------------------------------

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
------	--------------------------------

5.2.12 ITcSysManager2::GetLastErrorMessage

The GetLastErrorMessage() method returns the last error messages.

```
HRESULT GetLastErrorMessage();
```

Parameters

None

Return Values

STRING Returns last error messages.

5.2.13 ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem

The LookupTreeItem() method returns a *ITcTreeItem* pointer of a tree item given by its full path name.

```
HRESULT LookupTreeItem(BSTRbstrItem, ITcSmTreeItem**pipItem);
```

Parameters

bstrItem	[in] path name of the tree item looking for. The full path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab. A list of shortcuts for the main tree items is listed below.
pipItem	[out, retval] points to the location of a <i>ITcSmTreeItem</i> [► 124] interface pointer on return. The interface pointer gives access to specific methods belonging to the tree item.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	the path name does not qualify an existing tree item.

Shortcuts

The main tree items that exists in every configuration file can be accessed via shortcuts. These shortcuts are language neutral and require less memory:

```
"TIIC": shortcut for "I/O Configuration"
"TIID": shortcut for "I/O Configuration^I/O Devices" or "I/O Configuration" TAB "I/O Devices"
"TIIC": shortcut for "Real-Time Configuration"
"TIIR": shortcut for "Real-Time Configuration^Route Settings"
"TIIT": shortcut for " Real-Time Configuration^Additional Tasks" or " Real-Time Configuration" TAB
"Additional Tasks"
"TIIS": shortcut for " Real-Time Configuration^Real-Time Settings" or " Real-Time Configuration" TAB
"Real-Time Settings"
"TIIP": shortcut for "PLC Configuration"
"TIIN": shortcut for "NC Configuration"
"TIIC": shortcut for "CNC Configuration"
"TIAC": shortcut for "CAM Configuration"
```

Sample (C++):

```
ITcSmTreeItem* ipItem;

BSTR bstrItem = L"TIID^Device 1 (C1220)";

if ( SUCCEEDED(spTsm->LookupTreeItem( bstrItem, &ipItem ))
)
{
// do anything with ipItem

ipItem->Release();
}
```

```

Sample (VB):Dim ipltem As ITcSmTreetItem
set ipltem = spTsm.LookupTreetItem("TIID^Device 1 (C1220)")
' do anything with ipltem

```

Comments

5.2.14 ITcSysManager3::LookupTreetItemById

The `LookupTreetItemById()` method returns a *ITcTreetItem* pointer of a tree item given by it's full path name.

```
HRESULT LookupTreeItemById(longitemType, longitemId, ITcSmTreeItem**pipItem);
```

Parameters

<code>itemType</code>	[in] Item type of the <i>TreetItem</i> to find.
<code>itemId</code>	[in] ID of the <i>TreetItem</i>
<code>pipItem</code>	[out, retval] points to the location of a ITcSmTreetItem [► 124] interface pointer on return. The interface pointer gives access to specific methods belonging to the tree item.

Return Values

<code>S_OK</code>	function returns successfully.
<code>TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)</code>	the <i>itemType</i> <i>itemId</i> combination doesn't qualify a valid tree item.

5.2.15 ITcSysManager3::ProduceMappingInfo

Generates an XML output that includes all currently configured mappings, e.g. between PLC and I/O.

```
HRESULT ProduceMappingInfo();
```

Parameters

none

Return Values

STRING: Returns XML structure that includes all configured mappings. The following snippet shows an example for this structure:

```

<VarLinks>
  <OwnerA Name="TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)">
    <OwnerB Name="TIIXC^Untitled2^Untitled2_Obj1 (CModule1)">
      <Link VarA="Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 3 (EL1008)^Channel 5^Input" VarB="Inputs^Value" />
      <Link VarA="Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 2 (EL2008)^Channel 4^Output" VarB="Outputs^Value" />
    </OwnerB>
  </OwnerA>
  <OwnerA Name="TIPC^Untitled1^Untitled1 Instance">
    <OwnerB Name="TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 2 (EL2008)">
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Outputs^MAIN.bOutput1" VarB="Channel 1^Output" />
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Outputs^MAIN.bOutput3" VarB="Channel 3^Output" />
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Outputs^MAIN.bOutput2" VarB="Channel 2^Output" />
    </OwnerB>
    <OwnerB Name="TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 3 (EL1008)">
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Inputs^MAIN.bInput1" VarB="Channel 1^Input" />
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Inputs^MAIN.bInput3" VarB="Channel 3^Input" />
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Inputs^MAIN.bInput2" VarB="Channel 2^Input" />
      <Link VarA="PlcTask Inputs^MAIN.bInput4" VarB="Channel 4^Input" />
    </OwnerB>
  </OwnerA>
</VarLinks>

```

This example shows mappings between PLC <--> I/O and TcCOM (C++) <--> I/O.

5.2.16 ITcSysManager3::ConsumeMappingInfo

Consumes an XML structure that includes the mapping information for a project.

```
HRESULT ConsumeMappingInfo(BSTR bstrXml);
```

Parameters

bstrXml

[in]: String with XML structure. The XML mapping information can be acquired by using `ITcSysManager3::ProduceMappingInfo()` [▶ 123].

5.3 ITcSmTreeItem

5.3.1 ITcSmTreeItem

Each tree item in a TwinCAT XAE configuration is represented by an instance of the *ITcSmTreeItem* interface, which enables various interactions with the tree item.

A tree item of this interface will be, for example, returned by calling the `ITcSysManager::LookupTreeItem` method, which is used to navigate through the tree.

Properties

ITcSmTreeltem Property	Type	Access	Description
Name	BSTR	RW	Name of tree item
Comment	BSTR	RW	Comment.
Disabled	BOOL	RW	Get/Set state of tree item which can be one of the following enum values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SMDS_NOT_DISABLED (item is enabled) • SMDS_DISABLED (item is disabled) • SMDS_PARENT_DISABLED (read only, set if one of its parent is disabled)
PathName	BSTR	R	Path of tree item in TwinCAT XAE. The branches are separated by '^'. The PathName may be used in other method calls, e.g. <code>ITCatSysManager::LookupTreeltem</code> [▶ 122]. Please note that this property uniquely identifies a tree item in TwinCAT XAE.
ItemType	ENUM	R	Categorization of a tree item, e.g. Devices, Boxes, PLC, As defined by <u>item types</u> [▶ 126].
ItemSubType	LONG	RW	<u>Sub type</u> [▶ 130] of a tree item.
Parent	ITcSmTreeltem*	R	Pointer to the parent tree item.
ChildCount	LONG	R	Number of childs. Childs counted by this property enclose only main childs of the tree item (e.g. boxes are main childs of a device but not the device process image). To access all childs use the <code>_NewEnum</code> property.
Child(LONG n)	ITcSmTreeltem*	R	ITcSmTreeltem pointer of the n-th child
VarCount((LONG x)	LONG	R	Number of variables belonging to the tree item. x = 0 counted the input variables, x = 1 the outputs
Var(LONG x, LONG n)	ITcSmTreeltem*	R	ITcSmTreeltem pointer of the n-th variable. x = 0 uses the input variables, x = 1 the outputs
_NewEnum	IUnknown* (IEnumVariant*)	R	Returns a enum interface that enumerates all child tree items of the current tree item. This property may be used, for example, by a For-Each statement.

Methods

ITcSmTreeltem Methods	Description	Available since
CreateChild [▶ 160]	Creates a child tree item.	TwinCAT 2.11
DeleteChild [▶ 162]	Deletes a child tree item.	TwinCAT 2.11
ImportChild [▶ 163]	Imports a child item from the clipboard or a previously exported file.	TwinCAT 2.11
ExportChild [▶ 163]	Exports a child item to the clipboard or a file.	TwinCAT 2.11
ProduceXml [▶ 158]	Returns a String containing the XML representation of the item, with all its item-specific data and parameters.	TwinCAT 2.11
ConsumeXml [▶ 159]	Consumes a String containing the XML representation of the tree item, with all its item-specific data and parameters.	TwinCAT 2.11
GetLastXmlError [▶ 164]	Gets the error message of the last erroneous ConsumeXml() call.	TwinCAT 2.11
LookupChild [▶ 163]	Searches for a child with the specified relative path.	TwinCAT 2.11

ITcSmTreeltem2 Methods	Description	Available since
ResoucesCount	For internal use only	TwinCAT 2.11
ChangeChildSubType	Changes the SubType of the ITcSmTreeltem.	TwinCAT 2.11
ClaimResources	For internal use only	TwinCAT 2.11

Version information

Requirements

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 2.11 and above

5.3.2 ITcSmTreeltem Item Types

Every tree item in TwinCAT System Manager / TwinCAT XAE is being **categorized** into various **groups** , e.g. devices, boxes, task, You can check the item type of a tree item by manually adding it to TwinCAT System Manager or XAE and then exporting its XML description via the corresponding menu entry.

- **TwinCAT System Manager:** Actions --> Export XML description
- **TwinCAT XAE:** TwinCAT --> Selected item --> Export XML description

```
<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Device 1 (EtherCAT)</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)</PathName>
  <ItemType>2</ItemType>
  <ItemId>1</ItemId>
  <ObjectId>#x03010010</ObjectId>
  <ItemSubType>111</ItemSubType>
```

In the resulting XML file, the item type is represented by the node <ItemType>.

General item types

Item type	Tag	Description
0	TREEITEMTYPE_UNKNOWN	---
1	TREEITEMTYPE_TASK	---
9	TREEITEMTYPE_IECPRJ	---
10	TREEITEMTYPE_CNCPRJ	---
11	TREEITEMTYPE_GSDMOD	Module of a Profibus GSD device
12	TREEITEMTYPE_CDL	---
13	TREEITEMTYPE_IECLZS	---
14	TREEITEMTYPE_LZSGRP	---
15	TREEITEMTYPE_IODEF	---
16	TREEITEMTYPE_ADDTASKS	---
17	TREEITEMTYPE_DEVICEGRP	---
18	TREEITEMTYPE_MAPGRP	---
30	TREEITEMTYPE_CANPDO	---
31	TREEITEMTYPE_RTIMESSET	---
32	TREEITEMTYPE_BCPLC_VARS	---
33	TREEITEMTYPE_FILENAME	---
34	TREEITEMTYPE_DNETCONNEC T	---
37	TREEITEMTYPE_FLBCMD	---
43	TREEITEMTYPE_EIPCONNECTI ON	---
44	TREEITEMTYPE_PNIOAPI	---
45	TREEITEMTYPE_PNIOMOD	---
46	TREEITEMTYPE_PNIOSUBMOD	---
47	TREEITEMTYPE_ETHERNETPR TOCOL	---
200	TREEITEMTYPE_CAMDEF	---
201	TREEITEMTYPE_CAMGROUP	---
202	TREEITEMTYPE_CAM	---
203	TREEITEMTYPE_CAMENCODER	---
204	TREEITEMTYPE_CAMTOOLGRP	---
205	TREEITEMTYPE_CAMTOOL	---
300	TREEITEMTYPE_LINEDEF	---
400	TREEITEMTYPE_ISGDEF	---
401	TREEITEMTYPE_ISGCHANNEL	---
402	TREEITEMTYPE_ISGAGROUP	---
403	TREEITEMTYPE_ISGAXIS	---
500	TREEITEMTYPE_RTSCONFIG	---
501	TREEITEMTYPE_RTSAPP	---
502	TREEITEMTYPE_RTSAPPTASK	---
503	TREEITEMTYPE_RTSADI	---
504	TREEITEMTYPE_CPPCONFIG	---
505	TREEITEMTYPE_SPLCCONFIG	---

I/O item types

Item type	Tag	Description
2	TREEITEMTYPE_DEVICE	I/O Device
3	TREEITEMTYPE_IMAGE	Process Image
4	TREEITEMTYPE_MAPPING	---
5	TREEITEMTYPE_BOX	I/O Box (e.g. "BK2000", child of I/O Devices)
6	TREEITEMTYPE_TERM	I/O Terminal (child of terminal couplers (box))
7	TREEITEMTYPE_VAR	Variable
8	TREEITEMTYPE_VARGRP	Variable Group (e.g. "Inputs")
35	TREEITEMTYPE_NV PUBLISHER VAR	---
36	TREEITEMTYPE_NV SUBSCRIBE RVAR	---

PLC item types

Item type	Tag	Description
600	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCAPP	PLC application (root PLC object) ¹
601	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCFOLDER	PLC folder ¹
602	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPOUPROG	POU Program ¹
603	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPOUFUNC	POU Function ¹
604	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPOUFB	POU Function Block ¹
605	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCDUTENUM	DUT enum data type ¹
606	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCDUTSTRUCT	DUT struct data type ¹
607	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCDUTUNION	DUT union data type ¹
608	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCACTION	PLC action ¹
609	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCMETHOD	PLC method ¹
610	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCITFMETH	PLC interface method ¹
611	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPROP	PLC property ¹
612	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCITFPROP	PLC interface property ¹
613	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPROPGET	PLC property getter ¹
614	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPROPSET	PLC property setter ¹
615	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCGVL	GVL (Global variable list) ¹
616	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCTRANS	PLC Transition ¹
617	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCLIBMAN	PLC library manager ¹
618	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCITF	PLC interface ¹
619	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCVISOBJ	PLC visual object ¹
620	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCVISMAN	PLC visual manager ¹
621	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCTASK	PLC task object ¹
622	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCPROGREF	PLC program reference ¹
623	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCDUTALIAS	DUT Alias
624	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCEXTDATATYPECONT	PLC external data type container ¹
625	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCTMCDESCRIPTION	PLC TMC description file ¹
654	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCITFPROPGET	PLC interface property getter
655	TREEITEMTYPE_PLCITFPROPSSET	PLC interface property setter

NC item types

Item type	Tag	Description
19	TREEITEMTYPE_NCDEF	---
20	TREEITEMTYPE_NCAXISES	---
21	TREEITEMTYPE_NCCHANNEL	NC Channel
22	TREEITEMTYPE_NCAXIS	NC Axis
23	TREEITEMTYPE_NCENCODER	---
24	TREEITEMTYPE_NCDRIVE	---
25	TREEITEMTYPE_NCCONTROLLER	---
26	TREEITEMTYPE_NCGROUP	---
27	TREEITEMTYPE_NCINTERPRETER	---
40	TREEITEMTYPE_NCTABLEGRP	---
41	TREEITEMTYPE_NCTABLE	---
42	TREEITEMTYPE_NCTABLESLAVE	---

Requirements

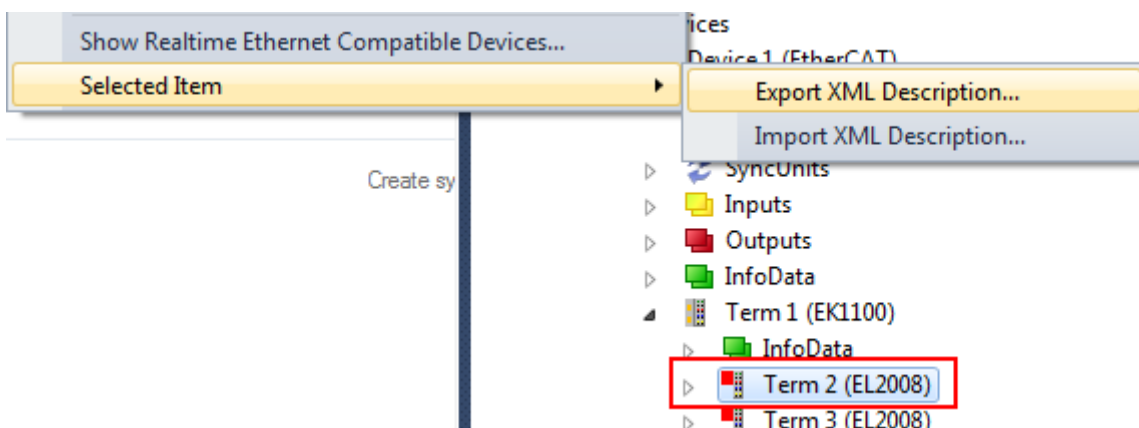
Notes	
1	requires TwinCAT 3.1

5.3.3 Tree item sub types

5.3.3.1 ITcSmTreeItem Item Sub Types

Item sub types specify what kind of **device**, **box** or **terminal** is being used, for example a sub type of 2408 identifies a KL2408 digital output terminal. You can check the sub type of an item by manually adding it in TwinCAT System Manager or XAE and then export its XML description via the corresponding menu entry.

- **TwinCAT System Manager:** Actions --> Export XML description
- **TwinCAT XAE:** TwinCAT --> Selected item --> Export XML description



In the resulting XML file, the sub type is represented by the node <ItemSubType>. In the above example, we exported the XML description of an EL2008 terminal. The XML file shows that this terminal has a sub type of 9099.

```

<TreeItem>
  <ItemName>Term 2 (EL2008)</ItemName>
  <PathName>TIID^Device 1 (EtherCAT)^Term 1 (EK1100)^Term 2 (EL2008)</PathName>
  <ItemType>5</ItemType>
  <ItemId>2</ItemId>
  <ObjectId>#x03020002</ObjectId>
  <ItemSubType>9099</ItemSubType>
  <ItemSubTypeName>EL2008 8Ch. Dig. Output 24V, 0.5A</ItemSubTypeName>
  <ChildCount>0</ChildCount>
  <Disabled>>false</Disabled>

```

The following tables will give you a good overview about some of the available sub types. If your devices is not listed, please perform the above steps to determine the sub type of your specific device.

Shortcuts:

- [Devices \[▶ 133\]](#)
- [Boxes \[▶ 140\]](#)
- [Terminals: E-Bus \[▶ 131\]](#) (ELxxxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus digital input \[▶ 146\]](#) (KL1xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus digital output \[▶ 148\]](#) (KL2xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus analog input \[▶ 151\]](#) (KL3xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus analog output \[▶ 153\]](#) (KL4xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus position measurement \[▶ 153\]](#) (KL5xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus communication \[▶ 154\]](#) (KL6xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus power \[▶ 155\]](#) (KL8xxx)
- [Terminals: K-Bus safety \[▶ 157\]](#) (KLx90x)
- [Terminals: K-Bus system \[▶ 156\]](#) (KL9xxx)

5.3.3.2 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: E-Bus

Due to their architecture, E-Bus **boxes** , **terminals** and **modules** will be handled differently than their K-Bus counterparts, e.g. during creation using the [CreateChild\(\) \[▶ 160\]](#) method. As each K-Bus terminal will be specified according to its specific sub type, E-Bus terminals are recognized via one common sub type and then specified via their "**Product Revision** " which will be used as the vInfo parameter in the CreateChild() method.

Sub type	Description
9099	Generic sub type for all EtherCAT terminals. In case of CreateChild() [▶ 160] , a specific terminal will be defined via vInfo parameter.

There are a few exceptions to this rule, e.g. for RS232 terminals. The following table gives an overview about these exceptions:

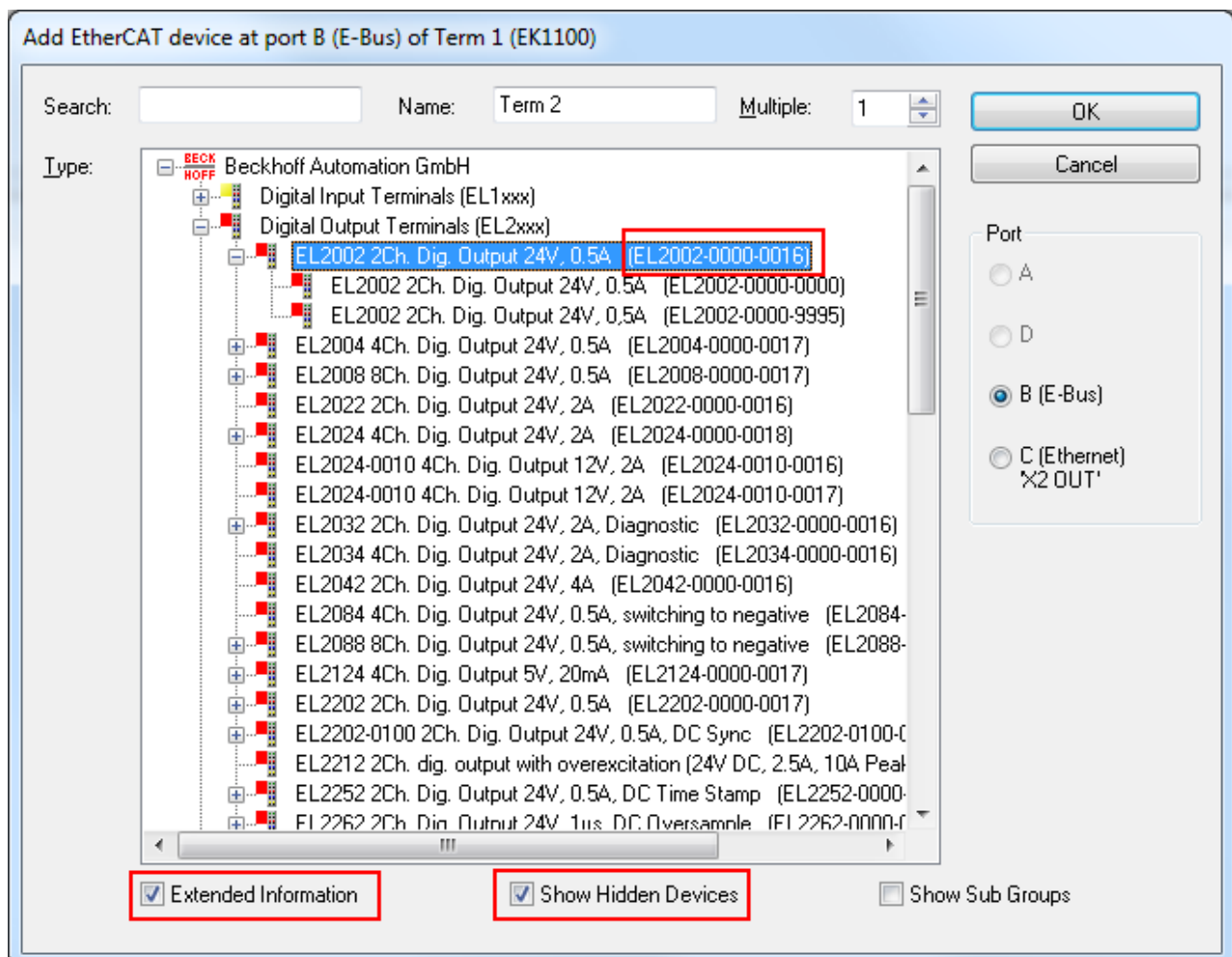
I/O	ItemSubType	Description
EP6002	9101	RS232 / RS422 / RS485 interface terminal
EL6001	9101	RS232 interface terminal
EL6002	9101	RS232 interface terminal (2-Channel)
EL6021	9103	RS422 / RS485 interface terminal
EL6022	9103	RS422 / RS485 interface terminal (2-Channel)

Code Snippet (C#)

```
ITcSmTreeItem ek1100 = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIID^EtherCAT Master^EK1100");
ek1100.CreateChild("EL2002 - 1", 9099, "", "EL2002-0000-0016");
```

Product revision

Each E-Bus box/terminal/module has its own product revision, which you can view either by exporting its [XML description](#) [▶ 25] or in the "Add Device" dialog in TwinCAT XAE.



For example, the EL2002 digital output terminal has the product revision EL2002-0000-0016, as you can also see in its XML description:

```

<EtherCAT>
- <Slave>
  - <Info>
    - <Name>
      <![CDATA[ Term 3 (EL2002) ]]>
    </Name>
    <PhysAddr>1002</PhysAddr>
    <AutoIncAddr>65535</AutoIncAddr>
    <Physics>KK</Physics>
    <VendorId>2</VendorId>
    <ProductCode>131215442</ProductCode>
    <RevisionNo>1048576</RevisionNo>
    <SerialNo>0</SerialNo>
    <ProductRevision>EL2002-0000-0016</ProductRevision>
    <Type>EL2002</Type>
  </Info>

```

To get the XML description of a tree item, simply do the following:

- **TwinCAT 2:** Add the item to System Manager, select it and, from the menu, choose "Actions" --> "Export XML description"
- **TwinCAT 3:** Add the item to XAE, select it and, from the menu, choose "TwinCAT" --> "Selected item" --> "Export XML description"

5.3.3.3 Devices

5.3.3.3.1 ITcSmTreetItem Item Sub Types: Devices

Devices: Miscellaneous

Sub type	Tag	Description
0	IODEVICETYPE_UNKNOWN	---
6	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFC	Beckhoff Industrial-PC C2001
9	IODEVICETYPE_LPTPORT	LPT Port
10	IODEVICETYPE_DPRAM	Generic DPRAM
11	IODEVICETYPE_COMPORT	COM Port
18	IODEVICETYPE_FCXXXX	Beckhoff-FeldbusCard
32	IODEVICETYPE_SMB	Motherboard System Management Bus
43	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFNCBP	Beckhoff NC Rückwand
44	IODEVICETYPE_SERCANSPCI	Sercos Master (SICAN/IAM PCI)
46	IODEVICETYPE_SERCONPCI	Sercon 410B or 816 Chip Master or Slave (PCI)
53	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFAH2000	Beckhoff AH2000 (Hydraulik Backplane)
55	IODEVICETYPE_AH2000MC	Beckhoff-AH2000 mit Profibus-MC

Devices: Beckhoff CX Terminal Devices

Sub type	Tag	Description
120	IODEVICETYPE_CX5000	CX5000 Terminal Device
135	IODEVICETYPE_CX8000	CX8000 Terminal Device
105	IODEVICETYPE_CX9000_BK	CX9000 Terminal Device
65	IODEVICETYPE_CX1100_BK	CX1100 Terminal Device
124	IODEVICETYPE_CCAT	Beckhoff CCAT Adapter

Devices: Beckhoff CP Devices

Sub type	Tag	Description
14	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFCP2030	Beckhoff CP2030 (Pannel-Link)
31	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFCP9030	Beckhoff CP9030 (Pannel-Link with UPS, ISA)
52	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFCP9040	Beckhoff CP9040 (CP-PC)
54	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFCP9035	Beckhoff CP9035 (Pannel-Link with UPS, PCI)
116	IODEVICETYPE_BKHFCP6608	Beckhoff CP6608(IXP PC)

Devices: Beckhoff BC/BX Devices

Sub type	Tag	Description
77	IODEVICETYPE_BX_BK	BX Klemmenbus Interface
78	IODEVICETYPE_BX_M510	BX SSB-Master
103	IODEVICETYPE_BC8150	BCXX50 Serial Slave
104	IODEVICETYPE_BX9000	BX9000 Ethernet Slave
107	IODEVICETYPE_BC9050	BC9050 Etherent Slave
108	IODEVICETYPE_BC9120	BC9120 Etherent Slave
110	IODEVICETYPE_BC9020	BC9020 Etherent Slave

Devices: Beckhoff EtherCAT

Sub type	Tag	Description
94	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERCAT	Obsolete: EtherCAT Master. Use "111" instead.
111	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERCATPROT	EtherCAT Master
130	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERCATSLV	EtherCAT Slave
106	IODEVICETYPE_EL6601	EtherCAT Automation Protocol via EL6601
112	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERNETNVPROT	EtherCAT Automation Protocol (Network variables)
144	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERCATSIMULATION	EtherCAT-Simulation

Devices: Beckhoff Lightbus Master/Slave

Sub type	Tag	Description
67	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_M200	PC104 Lightbus-Master
68	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_B200	PC104 Lightbus-Slave
36	IODEVICETYPE_FC200X	Beckhoff-Lightbus-I/II-PCI-Card
114	IODEVICETYPE_EL6720	Beckhoff-Lightbus-EtherCAT-Klemme
1	IODEVICETYPE_C1220	Beckhoff Lightbus ISA interface card C1220
2	IODEVICETYPE_C1200	Beckhoff Lightbus ISA interface card C1200

Devices: Beckhoff Profibus Master/Slave

Sub type	Tag	Description
69	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_M310	PC104 ProfiBus-Master
70	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_B310	PC104 ProfiBus-Slave
33	IODEVICETYPE_PBMON	Beckhoff-PROFIBUS-Monitor
38	IODEVICETYPE_FC3100	Beckhoff-Profibus-PCI-Card
56	IODEVICETYPE_FC3100MON	Beckhoff-Profibus-Monitor-PCI-Karte
60	IODEVICETYPE_FC3100SLV	Beckhoff-Profibus-PCI-Karte als Slave
79	IODEVICETYPE_BX_B310	BX ProfiBus-Slave
83	IODEVICETYPE_BC3150	BCxx50 ProfiBus-Slave
86	IODEVICETYPE_EL6731	Beckhoff-Profibus-EtherCAT-Klemme
97	IODEVICETYPE_EL6731SLV	Beckhoff-Profibus-Slave-EtherCAT-Klemme

Devices: Beckhoff CANopen Master/Slave

Sub type	Tag	Description
71	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_M510	PC104 CANopen-Master
72	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_B510	PC104 CANopen-Slave
39	IODEVICETYPE_FC5100	Beckhoff-CanOpen-PCI-Card
58	IODEVICETYPE_FC5100MON	Beckhoff-CANopen-Monitor-PCI-Karte
61	IODEVICETYPE_FC5100SLV	Beckhoff-CanOpen-PCI-Karte als Slave
81	IODEVICETYPE_BX_B510	BX CANopen-Slave
84	IODEVICETYPE_BC5150	BCxx50 CANopen-Slave
87	IODEVICETYPE_EL6751	Beckhoff-CanOpen-EtherCAT-Klemme
98	IODEVICETYPE_EL6751SLV	Beckhoff-CanOpen-Slave-EtherCAT-Klemme

Devices: Beckhoff DeviceNet Master/Slave

Sub type	Tag	Description
73	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_M520	PC104 DeviceNet-Master
74	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_B520	PC104 DeviceNet-Slave
41	IODEVICETYPE_FC5200	Beckhoff-DeviceNet-PCI-Card
59	IODEVICETYPE_FC5200MON	Beckhoff-DeviceNet-Monitor-PCI-Karte
62	IODEVICETYPE_FC5200SLV	Beckhoff-DeviceNet-PCI-Karte als Slave
82	IODEVICETYPE_BX_B520	BX DeviceNet-Slave
85	IODEVICETYPE_BC5250	BCxx50 DeviceNet-Slave
88	IODEVICETYPE_EL6752	Beckhoff-DeviceNet-EtherCAT-Klemme
99	IODEVICETYPE_EL6752SLV	Beckhoff-DeviceNet-Slave-EtherCAT-Klemme

Devices: Beckhoff Sercos Master/Slave

Sub type	Tag	Description
75	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_M750	PC104 Sercos-Master
76	IODEVICETYPE_CX1500_B750	PC104 Sercos-Slave
48	IODEVICETYPE_FC7500	Beckhoff-SERCOS-PCI-Card

Devices: Ethernet

Sub type	Tag	Description
66	IODEVICETYPE_ENETRTMP	Ethernet Real Time Miniport
109	IODEVICETYPE_ENETADAPTER	Real-Time Ethernet Adapter (Multiple Protocol Handler)
138	---	Real-Time Ethernet Protocol (BK90xx, AX2000-B900)
45	IODEVICETYPE_ETHERNET	Virtual Ethernet Interface

Devices: USB

Sub type	Tag	Description
57	IODEVICETYPE_USB	Virtual USB Interface
125	---	Virtual USB Interface (Remote)

Devices: Hilscher

Sub type	Tag	Description
4	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30DPM	ISA ProfiBus-Master 2 kByte (Hilscher Card)
5	IODEVICETYPE_CIF40IBSM	ISA Interbus-S-Master 2 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
12	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30CAN	ISA CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Card)
13	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30PB	ISA ProfiBus-Master 8 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
16	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30IBM	ISA Interbus-S-Master (Hilscher-Card)
17	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30DNM	ISA DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Card)
19	IODEVICETYPE_CIF50PB	PCI ProfiBus-Master 8 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
20	IODEVICETYPE_CIF50IBM	PCI Interbus-S-Master (Hilscher-Card)
21	IODEVICETYPE_CIF50DNM	PCI DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Card)
22	IODEVICETYPE_CIF50CAN	PCI CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Card)
23	IODEVICETYPE_CIF60PB	PCMCIA ProfiBus-Master (Hilscher-Card)
24	IODEVICETYPE_CIF60DNM	PCMCIA DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Card)
25	IODEVICETYPE_CIF60CAN	PCMCIA CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Card)
26	IODEVICETYPE_CIF104DP	PC104 ProfiBus-Master 2 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
27	IODEVICETYPE_C104PB	PC104 ProfiBus-Master 8 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
28	IODEVICETYPE_C104IBM	PC104 Interbus-S-Master 2 kByte (Hilscher-Card)
29	IODEVICETYPE_C104CAN	PC104 CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Card)
30	IODEVICETYPE_C104DNM	PC104 DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Card)
35	IODEVICETYPE_CIF60IBM	PCMCIA Interbus-S-Master (Hilscher-Card)
49	IODEVICETYPE_CIF30IBS	ISA Interbus-S-Slave (Hilscher-Card)
50	IODEVICETYPE_CIF50IBS	PCI Interbus-S-Slave (Hilscher-Card)
51	IODEVICETYPE_C104IBS	PC104 Interbus-S-Slave (Hilscher-Card)
89	IODEVICETYPE_COMPB	COM ProfiBus-Master 8 kByte (Hilscher-Karte)
90	IODEVICETYPE_COMIBM	COM Interbus-S-Master (Hilscher-Karte)
91	IODEVICETYPE_COMDNM	COM DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Karte)
92	IODEVICETYPE_COMCAN	COM CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Karte)
93	IODEVICETYPE_COMIBS	COM CANopen-Slave (Hilscher-Karte)

Sub type	Tag	Description
100	IODEVICETYPE_C104PPB	PC104+ ProfiBus-Master 8 kByte (Hilscher-Karte)
101	IODEVICETYPE_C104PCAN	PC104+ CANopen-Master (Hilscher-Karte)
102	IODEVICETYPE_C104PDNM	PC104+ DeviceNet-Master (Hilscher-Karte)

Devices: Profinet / Profibus

Sub type	Tag	Description
3	IODEVICETYPE_SPC3	ProfiBus Slave (Siemens Card)
7	IODEVICETYPE_CP5412A2	ProfiBus-Master (Siemens-Card)
34	IODEVICETYPE_CP5613	PCI ProfiBus-Master (Siemens-Card)
113	IODEVICETYPE_PROFINETICONTROLLER	PROFINET Master
115	IODEVICETYPE_PROFINETIODEVICE	PROFINET Slave

Devices: Indramat

Sub type	Tag	Description
8	IODEVICETYPE_SERCANSISA	Sercos Master (Indramat)

Devices: Phoenix

Sub type	Tag	Description
15	IODEVICETYPE_IBSSCIT	Interbus-S-Master (Phoenix-Card)
47	IODEVICETYPE_IBSSCRIRTLK	Interbus-S-Master with Slave-Part LWL Basis (Phoenix-Card)
63	IODEVICETYPE_IBSSCITPCI	PCI Interbus-S-Master (Phoenix-Karte)
64	IODEVICETYPE_IBSSCRILKPCI	PCI Interbus-S-Master mit Slave-Teil auf LWL Basis (Phoenix-Karte)
80	IODEVICETYPE_IBSSCRIRTPCI	PCI Interbus-S-Master mit Slave-Teil auf Kupfer Basis (Phoenix-Karte)

5.3.3.4 Boxes**5.3.3.4.1 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Boxes**

Sub type	Tag	Description
0	BOXTYPE_UNKNOWN	---
1	BOXTYPE_BK2000	BK2000 Lightbus coupler
2	BOXTYPE_M1400	M1400 Lightbus digital input/output module
3	BOXTYPE_M2400	M2400 Lightbus input/output module
4	BOXTYPE_M3120_1	M3120 Lightbus incremental encoder interface
5	BOXTYPE_M3120_2	M3120 Lightbus incremental encoder interface
6	BOXTYPE_M3120_3	M3120 Lightbus incremental encoder interface
7	BOXTYPE_M3120_4	M3120 Lightbus incremental encoder interface
8	BOXTYPE_M3000	M3000 absolute / incremental encoder
9	BOXTYPE_C1120	---
10	BOXTYPE_BK2010	BK2010 Lightbus coupler
11	BOXTYPE_AX2000	---
12	BOXTYPE_M2510	---
20	BOXTYPE_BK2020	BK2020 Lightbus coupler
21	BOXTYPE_BC2000	---
31	BOXTYPE_FOX20	---
32	BOXTYPE_FOX50	---
33	BOXTYPE_FOXRK001	---
34	BOXTYPE_FOXRK002	---
35	BOXTYPE_CP1001	---
40	BOXTYPE_IPXB2	---
41	BOXTYPE_ILXB2	---
42	BOXTYPE_ILXC2	---
50	BOXTYPE_TSMBOX_200	---
51	BOXTYPE_BX2000	---
52	BOXTYPE_CX1500_B200	---
1001	BOXTYPE_BK3000	---
1002	BOXTYPE_BK3100	---
1003	BOXTYPE_PBDP_GSD	---
1004	BOXTYPE_BK3010	---
1005	BOXTYPE_BK3110	---
1006	BOXTYPE_BK3500	---
1007	BOXTYPE_LC3100	---
1008	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE	---
1009	BOXTYPE_BK3020	---
1010	BOXTYPE_BK3120	---
1011	BOXTYPE_BC3100	---
1012	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE2	---
1013	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE3	---
1014	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE4	---
1015	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE5	---
1016	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE6	---
1017	BOXTYPE_PBDP_DRIVE7	---

Sub type	Tag	Description
1018	BOXTYPE_PBDDP_DRIVE8	---
1019	BOXTYPE_BK3150	---
1020	BOXTYPE_BC3150	---
1021	BOXTYPE_BK3XXX	---
1022	BOXTYPE_BC3XXX	---
1030	BOXTYPE_IPXB3	---
1031	BOXTYPE_ILXB3	---
1032	BOXTYPE_ILXC3	---
1040	BOXTYPE_TSMBOX_310	---
1041	BOXTYPE_BX3100	---
1042	BOXTYPE_CX1500_B310	---
1043	BOXTYPE_FC310X_SLAVE	---
1044	BOXTYPE_EL6731_SLAVE	---
1051	BOXTYPE_AX2000_B310	---
1100	BOXTYPE_TCPBDPSLAVE	---
1101	BOXTYPE_TCFDLAGAG	---
1102	BOXTYPE_TCMPI	---
1103	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE	---
1104	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE2	---
1105	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE3	---
1106	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE4	---
1107	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE5	---
1108	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE6	---
1109	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE7	---
1110	BOXTYPE_TCPBMCSLAVE8	---
1111	BOXTYPE_TCPBMONSLAVE	---
2001	BOXTYPE_BK4000	---
2002	BOXTYPE_IBS_GENERIC	---
2003	BOXTYPE_IBS_BK	---
2004	BOXTYPE_BK4010	---
2005	BOXTYPE_BK4500	---
2006	BOXTYPE_BK4510	---
2007	BOXTYPE_IBS_SLAVEBOX	---
2008	BOXTYPE_BC4000	---
2009	BOXTYPE_BK4020	---
2020	BOXTYPE_CP2020	---
2030	BOXTYPE_IPXB4	---
2031	BOXTYPE_ILXB4	---
2032	BOXTYPE_ILXC4	---
3001	BOXTYPE_SERCOSAXIS	---
3011	BOXTYPE_BK7500	---
3012	BOXTYPE_BK7510	---
3013	BOXTYPE_BK7520	---
3021	BOXTYPE_SERCOSMASTERBOX	---
3031	BOXTYPE_SERCOSLAVEBOX	---
4001	BOXTYPE_BK8100	BK8100 bus coupler
4002	BOXTYPE_BK8110	BK8110 bus coupler
4003	BOXTYPE_BK8000	BK8000 bus coupler

Sub type	Tag	Description
4004	BOXTYPE_BK8010	BK8010 bus coupler
4005	BOXTYPE_CP9040	CP9040 PCB
4011	BOXTYPE_BC8000	BC8000 bus terminal controller
4012	BOXTYPE_BC8100	BC8100 bus terminal controller
4030	BOXTYPE_IPXB80	---
4031	BOXTYPE_ILXB80	---
4032	BOXTYPE_ILXC80	---
4040	BOXTYPE_IPXB81	---
4041	BOXTYPE_ILXB81	---
4042	BOXTYPE_ILXC81	---
4050	BOXTYPE_BC8150	BC8150 bus terminal controller
5001	BOXTYPE_BK5100	BK5100 bus coupler
5002	BOXTYPE_BK5110	BK5110 bus coupler
5003	BOXTYPE_CANNODE	---
5004	BOXTYPE_BK5120	BK5120 bus coupler
5005	BOXTYPE_LC5100	---
5006	BOXTYPE_CANDRIVE	---
5007	BOXTYPE_AX2000_B510	---
5008	BOXTYPE_BK5150	BK5150 bus coupler
5009	BOXTYPE_BK5151	BK5151 bus coupler
5011	BOXTYPE_BC5150	BC5150 bus terminal controller
5030	BOXTYPE_IPXB51	---
5031	BOXTYPE_ILXB51	---
5032	BOXTYPE_ILXC51	---
5040	BOXTYPE_TSMBOX_510	---
5041	BOXTYPE_BX5100	BX5100 CANopen bus terminal controller
5042	BOXTYPE_CX1500_B510	---
5043	BOXTYPE_FC510XSLV	---
5050	BOXTYPE_TCCANSLAVE	---
5051	BOXTYPE_CANQUEUE	CAN Interface
5201	BOXTYPE_BK5200	---
5202	BOXTYPE_BK5210	---
5203	BOXTYPE_DEVICENET	---
5204	BOXTYPE_BK5220	---
5205	BOXTYPE_LC5200	---
5211	BOXTYPE_BK52XX	---
5212	BOXTYPE_BC52XX	---
5230	BOXTYPE_IPXB52	---
5231	BOXTYPE_ILXB52	---
5232	BOXTYPE_ILXC52	---
5250	BOXTYPE_TCDNSLAVE	---
9001	BOXTYPE_BK9000	BK9000 Ethernet TCP/IP bus coupler
9002	BOXTYPE_BK9100	BK9100 Ethernet TCP/IP bus coupler
9005	BOXTYPE_BK9050	BK9050 Ethernet TCP/IP bus coupler
9011	BOXTYPE_BC9000	BC9000 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller

Sub type	Tag	Description
9012	BOXTYPE_BC9100	BC9100 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller
9013	BOXTYPE_BX9000	BX9000 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller
9014	BOXTYPE_BX9000SLV	---
9015	BOXTYPE_BC9050	BC9050 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller
9016	BOXTYPE_BC9050SLV	BC9050 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller slave
9017	BOXTYPE_BC9120	BC9120 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller
9018	BOXTYPE_BC9120SLV	BC9120 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller slave
9019	BOXTYPE_BC9020	BC9020 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller
9020	BOXTYPE_BC9020SLV	BC9020 Ethernet TCP/IP bus terminal controller slave
9030	BOXTYPE_IPXB9	---
9031	BOXTYPE_ILXB9	---
9032	BOXTYPE_ILXC9	---
9041	BOXTYPE_REMOTETASK	---
9051	BOXTYPE_NV_PUB	Network Publisher.
9052	BOXTYPE_NV_SUB	Network Subscriber.
9053	BOXTYPE_NV_PUBVAR	Publisher variable.
9054	BOXTYPE_NV_SUBVAR	Subscriber variable.
9055	BOXTYPE_NV_PUBDATA	Publisher data object.
9056	BOXTYPE_NV_SUBDATA	Subscriber data object.
9061	BOXTYPE_AX2000_B900	---
9071	BOXTYPE_FLB_FRAME	---
9081	BOXTYPE_BK1120	---
9085	BOXTYPE_IPXB11	---
9086	BOXTYPE_ILXB11	---
9087	BOXTYPE_ILXC11	---
9105	BOXTYPE_FSOESLAVE	---
9121	BOXTYPE_PNIODEVICE	---
9122	BOXTYPE_PNIOTCDEVICE	---
9123	BOXTYPE_PNIODEVICEINTF	Profinet TwinCAT Device Interface
9124	BOXTYPE_PNIO_DRIVE	---
9125	BOXTYPE_PNIOBK9103	---
9126	BOXTYPE_PNIOILB903	---
9132	BOXTYPE_BK9053	BK9053 K-Bus coupler, PROFINET IO RT
9133	BOXTYPE_EIPSLAVEINTF	---
9143	BOXTYPE_PTPSLAVEINTF	---
9151	BOXTYPE_RAWUDPINTF	---
9500	BOXTYPE_BK9500	BK9500
9510	BOXTYPE_BK9510	BK9510
9520	BOXTYPE_BK9520	BK9520
9591	BOXTYPE_CPX8XX	---
9700	BOXTYPE_CX1102	---

Sub type	Tag	Description
9701	BOXTYPE_CX1103	---
9702	BOXTYPE_CX1190	---

5.3.3.5 Terminals**5.3.3.5.1 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus digital input (KL1)**

Sub type	Description
1002	KL1002 2-Channel digital input terminal
1012	KL1012 2-Channel digital input terminal
1032	KL1032 2-Channel digital input terminal
1052	KL1052 2-Channel digital input terminal
1104	KL1104 4-Channel digital input terminal
1114	KL1114 4-Channel digital input terminal
1124	KL1124 4-Channel digital input terminal
1154	KL1154 4-Channel digital input terminal
1164	KL1164 4-Channel digital input terminal
1184	KL1184 4-Channel digital input terminal
1194	KL1194 4-Channel digital input terminal
1212	KL1212 2-Channel digital input terminal
1232	KL1232 2-Channel digital input terminal
1302	KL1302 2-Channel digital input terminal
1304	KL1304 4-Channel digital input terminal
1312	KL1312 2-Channel digital input terminal
1314	KL1314 4-Channel digital input terminal
1352	KL1352 2-Channel digital input terminal
1362	KL1362 2-Channel digital input terminal
1382	KL1382 2-Channel digital input terminal
1402	KL1402 2-Channel digital input terminal
1404	KL1404 4-Channel digital input terminal
1408	KL1408 8-Channel digital input terminal
1412	KL1412 2-Channel digital input terminal
1414	KL1414 4-Channel digital input terminal
1418	KL1418 8-Channel digital input terminal
1434	KL1434 4-Channel digital input terminal
1488	KL1488 8-Channel digital input terminal
1498	KL1498 8-Channel digital input terminal
1501	KL1501 1-Channel digital input terminal
1512	KL1512 2-Channel digital input terminal
1702	KL1702 2-Channel digital input terminal
1712	KL1712 2-Channel digital input terminal
16778928	KL1712-0060 2-Channel digital input terminal
1722	KL1722 2-Channel digital input terminal
1804	KL1804 4-Channel digital input terminal
1808	KL1808 8-Channel digital input terminal
1809	KL1809 16-Channel digital input terminal
1814	KL1814 4-Channel digital input terminal
1819	KL1819 16-Channel digital input terminal
1859	KL1859 8-Channel digital input terminal
1862	KL1862 16-Channel digital input terminal
16779078	KL1862-0010 16-Channel digital input terminal
1872	KL1872 16-Channel digital input terminal
1889	KL1889 16-Channel digital input terminal
1202	KL1202 2-Channel digital input terminal

5.3.3.5.2 ITcSmTreeltem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus digital output (KL2)

Sub type	Description
2408	KL2408 8-Channel digital output terminal
2012	KL2012 2-Channel digital output terminal
2022	KL2022 2-Channel digital output terminal
2032	KL2032 2-Channel digital output terminal
2114	KL2114 4-Channel digital output terminal
2124	KL2124 4-Channel digital output terminal
2134	KL2134 4-Channel digital output terminal
2184	KL2184 4-Channel digital output terminal
2212	KL2212 2-Channel digital output terminal
2404	KL2404 4-Channel digital output terminal
2212	KL2212 2-Channel digital output terminal
2404	KL2404 4-Channel digital output terminal
2408	KL2408 8-Channel digital output terminal
2284	KL2284 4-Channel digital output terminal
2424	KL2424 4-Channel digital output terminal
2442	KL2442 2-Channel digital output terminal
2488	KL2488 8-Channel digital output terminal
2502	KL2502 2-Channel PWM output terminal
2512	KL2512 2-Channel PWM output terminal
2521	KL2521 1-Channel Pulse Train output terminal
2531	KL2531 1-Channel Stepper Motor terminal
16779747	KL2531-1000 1-Channel Stepper Motor terminal
2532	KL2532 2-Channel DC Motor amplifier output terminal
2535	KL2535 2-Channel PWM amplifier output terminal
2541	KL2541 1-Channel Stepper Motor terminal
16779757	KL2541-1000 1-Channel Stepper Motor terminal
2542	KL2542 2-Channel DC Motor amplifier terminal
2545	KL2545 2-Channel PWM amplifier output terminal
2552	KL2552 2-Channel DC Motor amplifier terminal
2602	KL2602 2-Channel output relay terminal
2612	KL2612 2-Channel output relay terminal
2622	KL2622 2-Channel output relay terminal
2631	KL2631 1-Channel power output relay terminal
2641	KL2641 1-Channel power output relay terminal
2652	KL2652 2-Channel power output relay terminal
2701	KL2701 1-Channel solid state load relay terminal
2702	KL2702 2-Channel output solid state relay terminal
16779918	KL2702-0002 2-Channel output solid state relay terminal
33557134	KL2702-0020 2-Channel output solid state relay terminal
2712	KL2712 2-Channel triac output terminal
2722	KL2722 2-Channel triac output terminal
2732	KL2732 2-Channel triac output terminal
2744	KL2744 4-Channel output solid state relay
2751	KL2751 1-Channel universal dimmer terminal
33557183	KL2751-1200 1-Channel universal dimmer terminal
2761	KL2761 1-Channel universal dimmer terminal

Sub type	Description
2784	KL2784 4-Channel output terminal
2791	KL2791 1-Channel speed controller terminal
33557223	KL2791-1200 1-Channel speed controller terminal
2794	KL2794 4-Channel output terminal
2808	KL2808 8-Channel output terminal
2809	KL2809 16-Channel output terminal
2872	KL2872 16-Channel output terminal
2889	KL2889 16-Channel output terminal

5.3.3.5.3 ITcSmTreeltem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus analog input (KL3)

Sub type	Description
3001	KL3001 1-Channel analog input terminal
3002	KL3002 3-Channel analog input terminal
3011	KL3011 1-Channel analog input terminal
3012	KL3012 2-Channel analog input terminal
3021	KL3021 1-Channel analog input terminal
3022	KL3022 2-Channel analog input terminal
3041	KL3041 1-Channel analog input terminal
3042	KL3042 2-Channel analog input terminal
3044	KL3044 4-Channel analog input terminal
3051	KL3051 1-Channel analog input terminal
3052	KL3052 2-Channel analog input terminal
3054	KL3054 4-Channel analog input terminal
3061	KL3061 1-Channel analog input terminal
3062	KL3062 2-Channel analog input terminal
3064	KL3064 4-Channel analog input terminal
3102	KL3102 2-Channel analog input terminal
3112	KL3112 2-Channel analog input terminal
3122	KL3122 2-Channel analog input terminal
3132	KL3132 2-Channel analog input terminal
3142	KL3142 2-Channel analog input terminal
3152	KL3152 2-Channel analog input terminal
3158	KL3158 8-Channel analog input terminal
3162	KL3162 2-Channel analog input terminal
3172	KL3172 2-Channel analog input terminal
33557604	KL3172-0500 2-Channel analog input terminal
67112036	KL3172-1000 2-Channel analog input terminal
3182	KL3182 2-Channel analog input terminal
3201	KL3201 1-Channel analog input terminal
3202	KL3202 2-Channel analog input terminal
3204	KL3204 4-Channel analog input terminal
33557640	KL3208-0010 8-Channel analog input terminal
3222	KL3222 2-Channel analog input terminal
3228	KL3228 8-Channel analog input terminal
3302	KL3302 2-Channel analog input terminal
3311	KL3311 1-Channel analog input terminal
3312	KL3312 2-Channel analog input terminal
3314	KL3314 4-Channel analog input terminal
3351	KL3351 1-Channel resistor bridge terminal
50334999	KL3351-0001 1-Channel resistor bridge terminal
3356	KL3356 1-Channel precise resistor bridge terminal
3361	KL3361 1-Channel oscilloscope terminal
3362	KL3362 2-Channel oscilloscope terminal
3403	KL3403 3-Phase power measuring terminal
3404	KL3404 4-Channel analog input terminal
3408	KL3408 8-Channel analog input terminal
3444	KL3444 4-Channel analog input terminal
3448	KL3448 8-Channel analog input terminal
3454	KL3454 4-Channel analog input terminal

Sub type	Description
3458	KL3458 8-Channel analog input terminal
3464	KL3464 4-Channel analog input terminal
3468	KL3468 8-Channel analog input terminal

5.3.3.5.4 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus analog output (KL4)

Sub type	Description
4001	KL4001 1-Channel analog output terminal
4002	KL4002 2-Channel analog output terminal
4004	KL4004 4-Channel analog output terminal
4011	KL4011 1-Channel analog output terminal
4012	KL4012 2-Channel analog output terminal
4021	KL4021 1-Channel analog output terminal
4022	KL4022 2-Channel analog output terminal
4031	KL4031 1-Channel analog output terminal
4032	KL4032 2-Channel analog output terminal
4034	KL4034 4-Channel analog output terminal
4112	KL4112 2-Channel analog output terminal
4122	KL4122 2-Channel analog output terminal
4132	KL4132 2-Channel analog output terminal
4404	KL4404 4-Channel analog output terminal
4408	KL4408 8-Channel analog output terminal
4414	KL4414 4-Channel analog output terminal
4418	KL4418 8-Channel analog output terminal
4424	KL4424 4-Channel analog output terminal
4428	KL4428 8-Channel analog output terminal
4434	KL4434 4-Channel analog output terminal
4438	KL4438 8-Channel analog output terminal
4494	KL4494 2-Channel analog output terminal

5.3.3.5.5 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus measuring (KL5)

Sub type	Description
5001	KL5001 1-Channel SSI encoder terminal
5051	KL5051 1-Channel Bi-SSI encoder terminal
16782267	KL5051-0010 1-Channel Bi-SSI encoder terminal
5101	KL5101 incremental encoder 5V terminal
5111	KL5111 incremental encoder 24V terminal
5121	KL5121 4-Channel line-motion-controller terminal
5151	KL5151 1-Channel incremental encoder terminal
33559583	KL5151-0021 1-Channel incremental encoder terminal
16782367	KL5151-0050 2-Channel incremental encoder terminal
5152	KL5152 2-Channel incremental encoder terminal

5.3.3.5.6 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus communication (KL6)

Sub type	Description
16783217	KL6001 interface RS232C terminal
50337649	KL6001 interface RS232 terminal
16783227	KL6011 interface TTY terminal
50337659	KL6011 interface TTY terminal
16783237	KL6021 interface RS422/485 terminal
50337669	KL6021 interface RS485 terminal
100669317	KL6021 interface RS485 terminal
100669327	KL6031 interface RS232 terminal
50337679	KL6031 interface RS232 terminal
100669337	KL6041 interface RS485 terminal
50337689	KL6041 interface RS485 terminal
16783257	KL6041-0100 interface RS485 terminal
6051	KL6051 data exchange terminal
335550521	KL6201 ASI-Master terminal
369104953	KL6201 ASI-Master terminal
402659385	KL6201 ASI-Master terminal
335550531	KL6211 ASI-Master terminal
369104963	KL6211 ASI-Master terminal
402659395	KL6211 ASI-Master terminal
6224	KL6224 I/O-Link Master terminal
16783440	KL6224 I/O-Link Master terminal
33560656	KL6224 I/O-Link Master terminal
50337872	KL6224 I/O-Link Master terminal
33560733	KL6301 EIB terminal
33560833	KL6401 LON terminal
33561013	KL6581 EnOcean terminal
33561203	KL6771 MP-Bus Master terminal
6781	KL6781 M-Bus interface terminal
6811	KL6811 DALI-Master terminal
6821	KL6821 eDALI-Master terminal

5.3.3.5.7 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus power (KL8)

Sub type	Description
33562433	KL8001 1-Channel power terminal
8001	KL8001 3-Channel power terminal
8519	KL8519 16 digital input terminal
8524	KL8524 2x4 digital output terminal
8528	KL8528 8 digital output terminal
8548	KL8548 8-Channel analog output terminal
8610	KL8610 1-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
16785826	KL8610 2-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
33563042	KL8610 3-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
50340258	KL8610 4-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
67117474	KL8610 5-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
83894690	KL8610 6-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
100671906	KL8610 7-Channel adapter terminal KL8601
117449122	KL8610 8-Channel adapter terminal KL8601

5.3.3.5.8 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus system (KL9)

Sub type	Description
9010	KL9010 end terminal
9020	KL9020 bus extension end terminal
9050	KL9050 bus extension coupler terminal
9060	KL9060 adapter terminal
9070	KL9070 shield terminal
9080	KL9080 separation terminal
9100	KL9100 power supplier terminal
9110	KL9110 power supplier terminal
9150	KL9150 power supplier terminal
9160	KL9160 power supplier terminal
9180	KL9180 potential connection terminal
9181	KL9181 potential connection terminal
9182	KL9182 potential connection terminal
9183	KL9183 potential connection terminal
9184	KL9184 potential connection terminal
9185	KL9185 potential connection terminal
9186	KL9186 potential connection terminal
9187	KL9187 potential connection terminal
9188	KL9188 potential connection terminal
9189	KL9189 potential connection terminal
9190	KL9190 power feed terminal
9195	KL9195 shield terminal
9200	KL9200 power supplier terminal
9210	KL9210 power supplier terminal
9250	KL9250 power supplier terminal
9260	KL9260 power supplier terminal
9290	KL9290 power supplier terminal
9300	KL9300 4-Channel diode array terminal
9301	KL9301 7-Channel diode array terminal
9302	KL9302 7-Channel diode array terminal
9309	KL9309 interface terminal for KL85xx
9400	KL9400 K-Bus power supplier terminal
9505	KL9505 power supplier terminal
167781665	KL9505-0010 power supplier terminal
9508	KL9508 power supplier terminal
167781668	KL9508-0010 power supplier terminal
9510	KL9510 power supplier terminal
167781670	KL9510-0010 power supplier terminal
9512	KL9512 power supplier terminal
167781672	KL9512-0010 power supplier terminal
9515	KL9515 power supplier terminal
167781675	KL9515-0010 power supplier terminal
9528	KL9528 power supplier terminal
9540	KL9540 surge filter field supply terminal
9550	KL9550 surge filter system and field supply terminal
9560	KL9560 power supplier terminal
9570	KL9570 buffer capacitor terminal

5.3.3.5.9 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Terminals: K-Bus safety (KLx90x)

Sub type	Description
1904	KL1904 4-Channel safety input terminal
1908	KL1908 8-Channel safety input terminal
2904	KL2904 4-Channel safety output terminal
6904	KL6904 safety logic (7 TwinSAFE connections) terminal
16784120	KL6904 safety logic (15 TwinSAFE connections) terminal

5.3.3.6 Modules

5.3.3.6.1 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Modules: K-Bus digital input (KM1)

Sub type	Description
838861802	KM1002 16-Channel digital input module
838861804	KM1004 32-Channel digital input module
838861808	KM1008 64-Channel digital input module
838861812	KM1012 16-Channel digital input module
838861814	KM1014 32-Channel digital input module
838861818	KM1018 64-Channel digital input module
838862444	KM1644 4-Channel digital input module

5.3.3.6.2 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Modules: K-Bus digital output (KM2)

Sub type	Description
838862802	KM2002 16-Channel digital output module
838862804	KM2004 32-Channel digital output module
838862808	KM2008 64-Channel digital output module
838862822	KM2022 16-Channel digital output module
838862842	KM2042 16-Channel digital output module
838863404	KM2604 4-Channel digital output relay module
838863414	KM2614 4-Channel digital output relay module
838863442	KM2642 2-Channel digital power output relay module
838863452	KM2652 2-Channel digital power output relay module
16779990	KM2774 4-Channel blinds control terminal
2774	KM2774-1001 4-Channel blinds control terminal

5.3.3.6.3 ITcSmTreetem Item Sub Types: Modules: K-Bus analog input (KM3)

Sub type	Description
838864501	KM3701 1-Channel differential pressure measuring
872418933	KM3701-0340 1-Channel differential pressure measuring
838864502	KM3702 2-Channel absolute pressure measuring
838864512	KM3712 2-Channel absolute pressure measuring

5.3.3.6.4 ITcSmTreeItem Item Sub Types: Modules: K-Bus analog output (KM4)

Sub type	Description
838865402	KM4602 2-Channel analog output terminal

5.3.3.6.5 ITcSmTreeItem Item Sub Types: Modules: K-Bus communication (KM6)

Sub type	Description
6551	KM6551 IEEE802.15.4 terminal
838867463	KM6663 Ethernet changeover switch terminal

5.3.4 ITcSmTreeItem::ProduceXml

The ProduceXml() method returns a XML string with item specific information and parameter.

```
HRESULT ProduceXml(VARIANT_Boolean bRecursive, BSTR* pXML);
```

Parameters

bRecursive	[in, defaultvalue(0)] Optional parameter for future use.
pXML	[out, retval] Contains the XML representation of the item specific data and parameter.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
E_POINTER	pXML pointer is invalid.

Comments

The following XML string is an incomplete example of the resulting information if the tree item is a I/O device of the type *SERCOS Master/Slave FC750x*. This string can be used as input for the IXMLDOMDocument::loadXML method to create a XML DOM document.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<Treeltem>
<ItemName>Device 1 (FC750x)</ItemName>
<PathName>TIID^Device 1 (FC750x)</PathName>
<ItemType>2</ItemType>
<ItemId>1</ItemId>
<ItemSubType>48</ItemSubType>
<ItemSubTypeName>SERCOS Master/Slave FC750x, PCI [Beckhoff FC7502 PCI]</ItemSubTypeName>
<ChildCount>0</ChildCount>
<Disabled>0</Disabled>
<DeviceDef>
<AmsPort>0</AmsPort>
<AddressInfo>
<Pci>
<BusNo>0</BusNo>
<SlotNo>16</SlotNo>
<IrqNo>9</IrqNo>
<FcChannel>0</FcChannel>
</Pci>
</AddressInfo>
<SercosMaster>
<Baudrate>0</Baudrate>
<OperationMode>0</OperationMode>
<SendPower>1</SendPower>
<AccessTime>200</AccessTime>
<ShiftTime>50</ShiftTime>
<StartupToPhase4>1</StartupToPhase4>
<CheckTiming>1</CheckTiming>
</SercosMaster>
</DeviceDef>
</Treeltem>

```

See also

[ITcSmTreeltem::ConsumeXML \[► 159\]](#)

5.3.5 ITcSmTreeltem::ConsumeXml

ITcSmTreeltem

The ConsumeXml() method consumes a BSTR containing the XML representation with item specific data and updates found parameters. This method is used to change item parameters not directly accessible by the ITcSmTreeltem interface.

```
HRESULT ConsumeXml(BSTRbstrXML);
```

Parameters

bstrXML	[in] string with the XML representation of the item specific parameter. The corresponding parameter will be updated in the System Manager database
---------	--

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
E_FAIL	the <i>bstrXML</i> string does not contain a valid xml document.

Comments

The document can only contain the specific parameter that should be changed. The document structure has to fit to the item specific XML tree, but parameter that should not be changed can be omitted. The following document is a minimal example that can be used to change the specific parameter *CheckNumberBoxes* of the item (in this case a C1220 fieldbus card). If the parameters in the document are not known by the item, they will be ignored.

```
<TreetItem><DeviceDef><DevC1220Def><CheckNumberBoxes>0</CheckNumberBoxes></DevC1220Def></DeviceDef></TreetItem>
```

The set of parameter of a specific tree item is defined in the xml schema document that comes with the TwinCAT System Manager. The parameter of a specific item can also be evaluated by calling the [ITcSmTreetItem::ProduceXML \[► 158\]](#) method. The resulting xml string contains all parameters of that item, but not all of them are changeable. The xml string can contain any number and hierarchical order of xml elements that are valid in terms of the xml schema. It is allowed to change only one parameter at a time (like in the example above), change a set of parameters at once or delivers the full parameter set that [ITcSmTreetItem::ProduceXML \[► 158\]](#) returns (normally with same parameters changed).

There are some special xml elements that are not corresponding to parameters, they will "execute" a function. An example is the `<Rescan>` element of a PLC project tree item. The string

```
<TreetItem><PlcDef><ReScan>1</ReScan></PlcDef></TreetItem>
```

as a parameter of **ConsumeXml** will cause the System Manager to rescan the PLC project (like a manually rescan by pressing the "Rescan" button on a PLC project). The parameters and the functions that are available are documented in the xml schema file.

See also

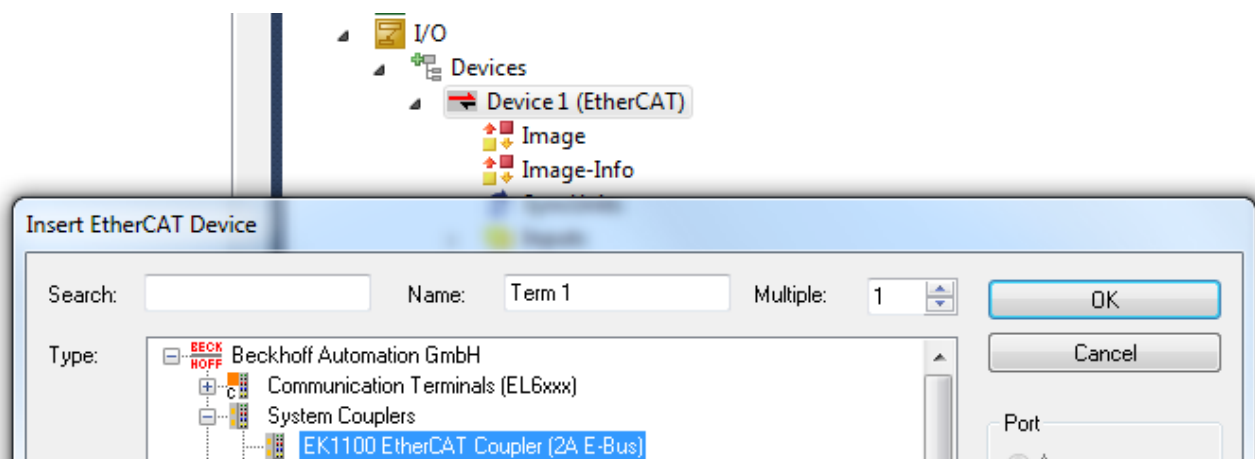
[ITcSmTreetItem::ProduceXML \[► 158\]](#)

5.3.6 ITcSmTreetItem::CreateChild

Creates a child item on a parent node. The child is being specified by its [subtype \[► 130\]](#).

```
HRESULT CreateChild(BSTRbstrName, long nSubType, BSTRbstrBefore, VARIANT vInfo, ITcSmTreeItem**pipItem);
```

The following example demonstrates this behavior in better detail.



In this example, an EK1100 coupler is being added to an EtherCAT Master device (Device 1) in TwinCAT XAE. In Automation Interface, this could be done with the `CreateChild()` method. The parent node (Device 1 EtherCAT) has the item type '2' (`TREEITEMTYPE_DEVICE`). The sub type specifies the child item and therefore the EK1100, which is sub type '9099' (`BOXTYPE_EXXXXX`).

Parameters

bstrName	[in] Item name of the new child item.
nSubtype:	[in] S [130] ub type [130] of the new child item. The usable sub type depends on the item type [126] (the category) of the parent tree item. For example, a PLC Functionblock may only be added to the item type PLCFOLDER and not to a DEVICE.
bstrBefore	[in, defaultvalue("")] If set, the parameter contains the name of another child item before that the new item should be inserted.
vInfo	[in, optional] An optional parameter with additional creation information, which depends on the sub type [130]. The different dependencies are listed in the table below.
pipltem	[out, retval] Points to the location of a ITcSmTreeltem [124] interface pointer that receives the result.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
E_POINTER	the location of the returning pointer is invalid
TSM_E_INVALIDITEMSUBTYPE (0x98510003)	the given sub type is invalid.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	The item <i>bstrBefore</i> was not found.

Optional vInfo parameter

Depending on the item subtype of the new child item, some additional information may be required to create the child item. This information can be provided via the *vInfo* parameter.

Untergeordnetes Element: Element-Subtyp	vInfo-Parameter
E-Bus Box / Klemme / Modul (Element-Subtyp 9099)	Contains the Identity Object (CoE 1018h, VendorId, ProductCode and optional RevisionNo and SerialNo) of the EtherCAT box. The type of the variant must be an array of LONG (VT_I4 VT_ARRAY, 2-4 elements). Alternatively contains a BSTR of the following formats (with %X = value in hex notation, e.g. "V00000002_P044c2c52_R00000000"): Especially for Beckhoff E-Bus terminals / modules, please read the corresponding E-Bus article [▶ 131].
Interbus-Box. (Element-Subtyp 2002)	Contains the IdentCode and LengthCode of the Interbus box. The type of the variant must be an unsigned short (VT_I2), the low byte contains the IdentCode the high byte the LengthCode.
AX2000 (Element-Subtyp 5007) CANDrive (Element-Subtyp 5006)	Optionally contains a bool value (VT_BOOL) and if set an additional variable for the `Following Error` will be created.
DeviceNET (Element-Subtyp 5203) TcDNSSlave (Element-Subtyp 5250) CX1500 (Element-Subtyp 1042) FC520X Slave (Element-Subtyp 1043)	Optionally contains the file path to an EDS file (VT_BSTR).
BK3000 und alle übrigen PROFIBUS-Box-Typen	Optionally contains the file path to an GSD file (VT_BSTR).
Variable	Optionally contains the bit address of the new variable. The type of the variant can be a SHORT or a LONG (VT_I2 or VT_I4).
SPS-POU Funktionsblock (Element-Subtyp 604)	Contains IEC language type as Integer, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [▶ 166] .
SPS-POU Funktion (Element-Subtyp 603)	Contains a string[2] array, which holds the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> array[0] = IEC language type as Integer, as defined by IECLANGUAGETYPES [▶ 166]. array[1] = return data type of function. May be any PLC data type, for example DINT, BOOL, ...

5.3.7 ITcSmTreeItem::DeleteChild

Deletes a child item.

```
HRESULT DeleteChild(BSTRbstrName);
```

Parameters

bstrName [[in]] Item name of the child item that should be deleted.

Return Values

S_OK function returns successfully.
E_ACCESSDENIED it is not allowed to delete the child item.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001) The item *bstrBefore* was not found.

5.3.8 ITcSmTreeItem::ImportChild

Imports a child item from the clipboard or a previously exported file.

```
HRESULT ImportChild(BSTRbstrFile, BSTRbstrBefore, VARIANT_BOOLbReconnect, BSTRbstrName,
ITcSmTreeItem**pipItem);
```

Parameters

bstrFile	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] File name of the file from which the new child will be imported. If no file name specified (empty string) the child will be imported from the clipboard.
bstrBefore	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] If set, the parameter contains the name of another child item in front of which the new item should be inserted. If not set, the child will be appended at the end.
bReconnect	[in, defaultvalue(VARIANT_TRUE)] An optional flag that instructs the System Manager to try to reconnect the variables from the imported item to other variables in the configuration (by name).
bstrName	[in, defaultvalue(L"")] If set, overrides the child item name with its name in the import file.
pipItem	[out, retval] Points to the location of a ITcSmTreeItem [▶_124] interface pointer that receives the result.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
NTE_NOT_FOUND (0x80090011)	the file can not be found/opened.
NTE_BAD_SIGNATURE (0x80090006)	the file does not contain a valid tree item.
TSM_E_MISMATCHINGITEMS (0x98510004)	the item in the file is not a valid child item.

5.3.9 ITcSmTreeItem::ExportChild

Exports a child item to the clipboard or a file.

```
HRESULT ExportChild(BSTRbstrName, BSTRbstrFile);
```

Parameters

bstrName	[in] Name of the child being exported.
bstrFile	[in, defaultvalue("")] File name of the file to which the child will be exported. If no file name specified (empty string) the child will be exported to the clipboard.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	The item <i>bstrName</i> was not found.

5.3.10 ITcSmTreeItem::LookupChild

Returns a *ITcTreeItem* pointer of a descendant child tree item given by it's relative path name.

```
HRESULT LookupChild(BSTRbstrName, ITcSmTreeItem**pipItem);
```

Parameters

bstrName	[in] relative path of the tree item you are looking for. The relative path name is required and each branch must be separated by a circumflex accent '^' or a tab.
pipltem	[out, retval] points to the location of a ITcSmTreeItem [I_124] interface pointer on return. The interface pointer gives access to specific methods belonging to the tree item.

Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND (0x98510001)	the path name does not qualify an existing tree item.

5.3.11 ITcSmTreeItem::GetLastXmlError

Gets the Item path / Error message of the last erroneous [ConsumeXml](#) [[I_159](#)] call.

```
HRESULT GetLastXmlError(BSTR *pXML);
```

Parameters

pXML	[out, retval] Error message.
------	------------------------------

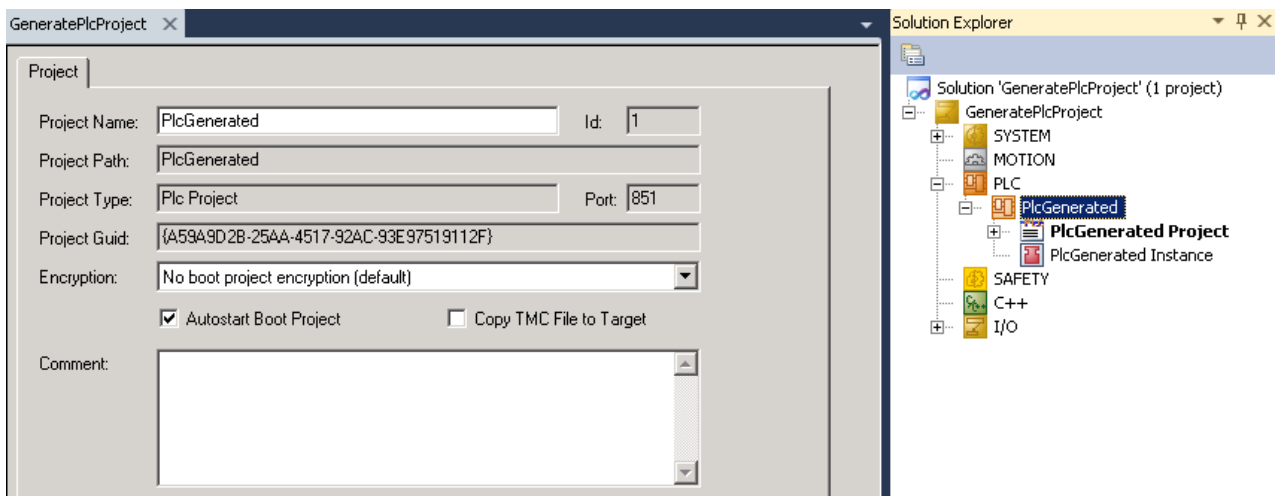
Return Values

S_OK	function returns successfully.
------	--------------------------------

5.4 ITcPlcProject

5.4.1 ITcPlcProject

The class `ITcPlcProject` enables developers to set properties for a PLC project. It usually targets the root node of a PLC project, as shown in the picture below.



The following C# code snippet shows an example about how this class may be used in Automation Interface code:

```
ITcSmTreeItem plcProjectRootItem = systemManager.LookupTreeItem("TIPC^PlcGenerated");
ITcPlcProject iecProjectRoot = (ITcPlcProject)plcProjectRootItem;
iecProjectRoot.BootProjectAutostart = true;
iecProjectRoot.GenerateBootProject (true);
```

Please note: If you would like to compile a PLC project, please use the compiler functionalities of the Visual Studio COM object EnvDTE, as shown in many of our [Samples \[▶ 182\]](#) .

Methods

ITcPlcProject methods	Description	Available since
GenerateBootProject() [▶ 165]	Equals the entry "Activate Boot project" from the TwinCAT XAE context menu	TwinCAT 3.1

Properties

ITcPlcProject properties	Get/Set	Description	Available since
BootProjectAutoStart	Yes / Yes	Equals the checkbox "Autostart Boot Project" in the dialog shown above	TwinCAT 3.1
BootProjectEncryption	Yes / Yes	Equals the dropdown box "Encryption" in the dialog shown above	TwinCAT 3.1
TmcFileCopy	Yes / Yes	Equals the checkbox "Copy TMC File to Target" in the dialog shown above	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.4.2 ITcPlcProject::GenerateBootProject

Activates or deactivates the PLC project as a boot project, depending on the bool parameter you specify.

```
HRESULT GenerateBootProject (VARIANT_BOOL bActivate);
```

Parameters

bActivate [in, optional, defaultvalue(-1)] Specifies if the boot project should be activated

5.5 ITcPlcPou

5.5.1 ITcPlcPou

To handle POU's and their content within a TwinCAT 3 project, the interfaces [ITcPlcPou](#), [ITcPlcDeclaration \[▶ 166\]](#) and [ITcPlcImplementation \[▶ 167\]](#) may be used. For example, if you would like to create a new function block for a PLC project and fill it with code, you can use these interfaces to do so. For more information, please refer to our best practise article about "How to access and create PLC-Objects".

Properties

ITcPlcPou properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
DocumentXml	Yes / Yes	Gets/Sets PLC code of a POU in XML format (not PLCopen XML)	TwinCAT 3.1
ReturnType	Yes / No	Return type of the POU, for example the return type of a function. May be any data type known to the PLC, for example BOOL, DINT, The return type is being set when creating the POU via the CreateChild() [160] method.	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Requirements

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.5.2 IECLanguageTypes

The enumeration IECLanguageTypes defines different programming languages according to IEC standard and may be used when creating a new POU via the method [ITcSmTreeltem](#) [[124](#)]::CreateChild() [[160](#)].

Entry	Value	Description
IECLANGUAGE_NONE	0	---
IECLANGUAGE_ST	1	Structured Text
IECLANGUAGE_IL	2	Instruction List
IECLANGUAGE_SFC	3	Sequential Function Chart
IECLANGUAGE_FBD	4	Function Block Diagram
IECLANGUAGE_CFC	5	Continous Function Chart
IECLANGUAGE_LD	6	Ladder Diagram

5.6 ITcPlcDeclaration

The interface ITcPlcDeclaration provides access to the declaration area of PLC POU's and their sub-nodes (like Actions, Methods, ...). Please also see the best practice article "Handling PLC-Objects" for more information about how to use this interface.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "POUProgram * X". The code is as follows:

```

1  FUNCTION_BLOCK POUProgram
2  VAR_INPUT
3      bIn : BOOL;
4  END_VAR
5  VAR_OUTPUT          Declaration area
6      bOut : BOOL;
7  END_VAR
8  VAR
9  END_VAR

```

```

1  i := i + 1; (* This code is added by script *)

```

The top section is labeled "Declaration area" and the bottom section is labeled "Implementation area".

Properties (in Vtable- Order)

ITcPlcDeclaration properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
DeclarationText	Yes / Yes	Represents the declaration area of the item and gets/sets its content in cleartext	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.7 ITcPlcImplementation

The interface ITcPlcImplementation provides access to the implementation area of PLC POU's and their sub-nodes (like Actions, Methods, ...). Please also see the best practice article about "Handling PLC-Objects" for more information about how to use this interface.

The screenshot shows a code editor window titled 'POUProgram *'. The code is as follows:

```

1  FUNCTION_BLOCK POUProgram
2  VAR_INPUT
3      bIn : BOOL;
4  END_VAR
5  VAR_OUTPUT          Declaration area
6      bOut : BOOL;
7  END_VAR
8  VAR
9  END_VAR

```

The implementation area is highlighted in yellow and contains the following code:

```

1  i := i + 1; (* This code is added by script *)

```

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcImplementation properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
ImplementationText	Yes / Yes	Represents the declaration area of the item and gets/sets its content in cleartext	TwinCAT 3.1
ImplementationXml	Yes / Yes	Gets/Sets the content in XML format (not PLCopen XML)	TwinCAT 3.1
Language	Yes / No	Gets the IEC language used in the implementation area	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

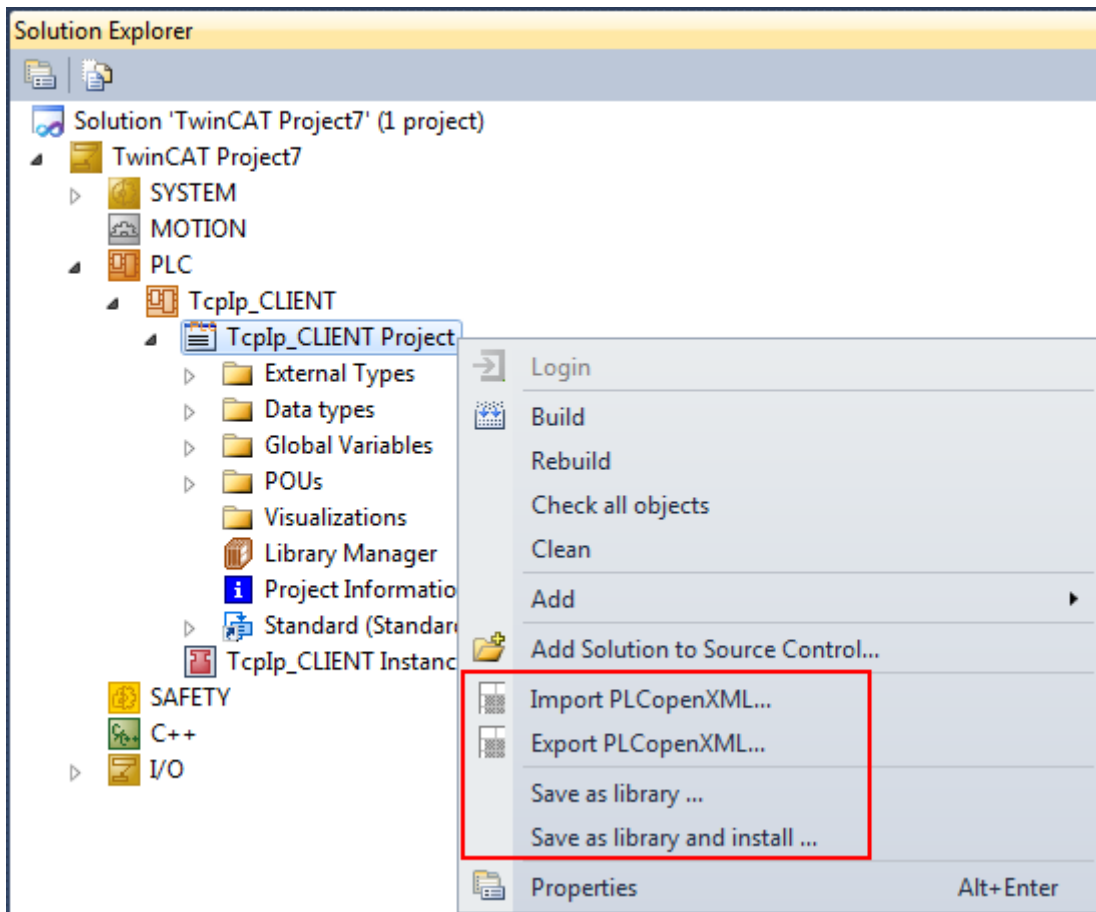
Requirements

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.8 ITcPlcIECProject

5.8.1 ITcPlcIECProject

The interface ITcPlcIECProject provides methods for importing and exporting PLC projects according to the PlcOpen XML standard or saving PLC projects as a PLC library. Compared to the TwinCAT XAE GUI, this interface represents the following four options:



Methods (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcIECProject methods	Description	Available since
PlcOpenExport() [▶ 170]	Exports the specified tree nodes and their content to a PlcOpen conform XML file	TwinCAT 3.1
PlcOpenImport() [▶ 170]	Imports a PlcOpen conform XML file and its content	TwinCAT 3.1
SaveAsLibrary() [▶ 171]	Saves the selected PLC project as a PLC library and optionally also installs it.	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Requirements

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.8.2 PlcImportOptions

This enum contains the following options and is being used when importing a PlcOpen conform XML file via method [ITcPlcIECProject](#) [[▶ 168](#)]::[PlcOpenImport\(\)](#) [[▶ 170](#)].

Return Values

S_OK PlcOpen XML file successfully imported.

5.8.5 ITcPlcIECProject::SaveAsLibrary

Saves the PLC project as a PLC library and optionally installs it.

```
HRESULT SaveAsLibrary(BSTR bstrLibraryPath, VARIANT_BOOL binstall);
```

Parameters

bStrLibraryPath

[in] : Path to the location where the PLC library should be saved to

binstall

[in] : set to "true" if PLC library should also be installed

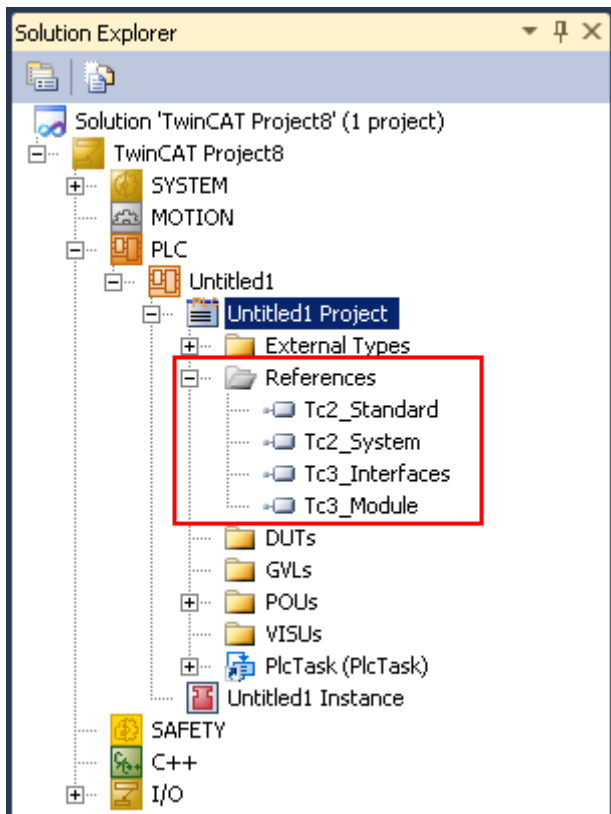
Return Values

S_OK PLC project successfully saved as a PLC library.

5.9 ITcPlcLibraryManager

5.9.1 ITcPlcLibraryManager

The ITcPlcLibraryManager interface extends the Automation Interface by enabling access to PLC libraries of a TwinCAT 3 PLC project or PLC repositories of a TwinCAT system.



Methods (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibraryManager methods	Description	Available since
AddLibrary() [▶ 173]	Adds a library to a PLC project.	TwinCAT 3.1
AddPlaceholder() [▶ 173]	Adds a placeholder to a PLC project	TwinCAT 3.1
InsertRepository() [▶ 174]	Creates a repository, which represents a logical container for several libraries.	TwinCAT 3.1
InstallLibrary() [▶ 174]	Installs a library into a repository.	TwinCAT 3.1
MoveRepository() [▶ 174]	Changes the position of the repository in the repository location list.	TwinCAT 3.1
RemoveReference() [▶ 174]	Removes library from the PLC project.	TwinCAT 3.1
RemoveRepository() [▶ 175]	Removes a repository.	TwinCAT 3.1
ScanLibraries() [▶ 175]	Returns a list of all libraries found in the system. The returned object is of type ITcPlcLibraries [▶ 178] , which is a collection of ITcPlcLibrary [▶ 177] objects.	TwinCAT 3.1
SetEffectiveResolution() [▶ 176]	Sets the Effective Resolution of a placeholder	TwinCAT 3.1
UninstallLibrary() [▶ 176]	Uninstalls a library from a repository.	TwinCAT 3.1

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibraryManager properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
References	Yes / No	Gets an object of type ITcPlcReferences [▶ 177] , which is a collection of ITcPlcLibrary [▶ 177] or ITcPlcPlaceholderRef objects. Represents a list of all references added to the PLC project.	TwinCAT 3.1
Repositories	Yes / No	Gets an object of type ITcPlcLibRepositories [▶ 180] , which is a collection of ITcPlcLibRepository [▶ 179] objects. Represents a list of all currently configured repositories.	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information**Requirements**

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.9.2 ITcPlcLibraryManager::AddLibrary

Adds a library to the PLC project. A library can either be added by its attributes (Name, Version, Company) or by its display text.

```
HRESULT AddLibrary(
  BSTR bstrLibName,
  BSTR bstrVersion,
  BSTR bstrCompany
);
```

```
HRESULT AddLibrary(BSTR bstrLibName, BSTR bstrVersion, BSTR bstrCompany);
```

Parameters

bstrLibName	[in] Library name.
bstrVersion	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Library version.
bstrCompany	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Company which created the library.

Return Values

S_OK	Library successfully added..
------	------------------------------

Comments

Two common ways to add a PLC library are:

- libraryManager.AddLibrary("Tc2_MDP", "3.2.0.0", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH"); // Adding library via its attributes
- libraryManager.AddLibrary("Tc2_MDP, 3.2.0.0 (Beckhoff Automation GmbH)"); // Adding library via its display name

Where libraryManager is an object of type ITcPlcLibraryManager.

5.9.3 ITcPlcLibraryManager::AddPlaceholder

Adds a placeholder to the PLC project. A placeholder can either be added by its attributes (Placeholder name, library name, library version, library distributor) or by its name if the placeholder already exists.

```
HRESULT AddPlaceholder(BSTR bstrPlaceholderName, BSTR bstrDefaultLibName, BSTR bstrDefaultVersion,
  BSTR bstrDefaultDistributor);
```

Parameters

bstrPlaceholderName	[in] Placeholder name.
bstrDefaultLibName	[in] Default library name which the placeholder points to.
bstrVersion	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Default library version.
bstrCompany	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Company which created the library.

Return Values

S_OK	Placeholder successfully added..
------	----------------------------------

5.9.4 ITcPlcLibraryManager::InsertRepository

Adds a new library repository at the specified position. The position represents the index at which the repositories is located in the repository list in TwinCAT 3. In addition to the index, a repository is identified via its name and path to a directory in the file system.

```
HRESULT InsertRepository(BSTR bstrName, BSTR rootFolder, int iIndex);
```

Parameters

bstrName	[in] Repository name.
rootFolder	[in] Path to repository (file system).
iIndex	[in] Indicates on which position the repository is located in the list of repositories.

Return Values

S_OK	Repository successfully inserted
------	----------------------------------

5.9.5 ITcPlcLibraryManager::InstallLibrary

Installs a library into an existing library repository.

```
HRESULT InstallLibrary(BSTR bstrRepositoryName, BSTR bstrLibPath, VARIANT_BOOL bOverwrite);
```

Parameters

bstrRepositoryName	[in] : Name of repository, where the library should be inserted
bstrLibPath	[in] : Path to the library
bOverwrite	[in] : If another library already exists, set this parameter to overwrite it

Return Values

S_OK	Library installation successful.
------	----------------------------------

5.9.6 ITcPlcLibraryManager::MoveRepository

Moves the repository to a new position in the list of repositories. The position is marked by its index, which starts at 0.

```
HRESULT MoveRepository(BSTR bstrRepositoryName, int iNewIndex);
```

Parameters

bstrRepositoryName	[in] : Name of the repository
iNewIndex	[in] : Index of the repository

5.9.7 ITcPlcLibraryManager::RemoveReference

Removes a reference from the actual PLC project. A reference can either be a library or a placeholder.

Please note: In case of a library, this only removes the reference, not the actual library file from the repository. For this, the method [UninstallLibrary \[► 176\]](#)() needs to be used.

Similar to the method [AddLibrary \[▶ 173\]\(\)](#), a library can be removed either by specifying its attributes (Name, Version, Company) or display text.

```
HRESULT RemoveReference(BSTR bstrLibName, BSTR bstrVersion, BSTR bstrCompany);
```

Parameters

bstrLibName	[in] : Name of library
bstrVersion	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] :
bstrCompany	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] :

Comments

Two common ways to remove a PLC library are:

- `libraryManager.RemoveReference("Tc2_MDP", "3.2.0.0", "Beckhoff Automation GmbH");` // Removing library via its attributes
- `libraryManager.RemoveReference("Tc2_MDP, 3.2.0.0 (Beckhoff Automation GmbH)");` // Removing library via its display name

Where `libraryManager` is an object of type `ITcPlcLibraryManager`.

5.9.8 ITcPlcLibraryManager::RemoveRepository

Removes a library repository. A repository is specified by its unique name.

```
HRESULT RemoveRepository(BSTR bstrName);
```

Parameters

bstrName

[in] Name of repository.

5.9.9 ITcPlcLibraryManager::ScanLibraries

Returns a collection of all registered libraries in all repositories.

```
HRESULT ScanLibraries(ITcPlcLibraries** ppEnumLibraries);
```

Parameters

ppEnumLibraries	[out, retval] Returns object of type ITcPlcLibraries [▶ 178] , which is a collection of ITcPlcLibrary [▶ 177] objects.
-----------------	--

Comments

This method provides the same functionality as importing the following XML structure via [ConsumeXml\(\) \[▶ 159\]](#) on the tree node "Library Manager":

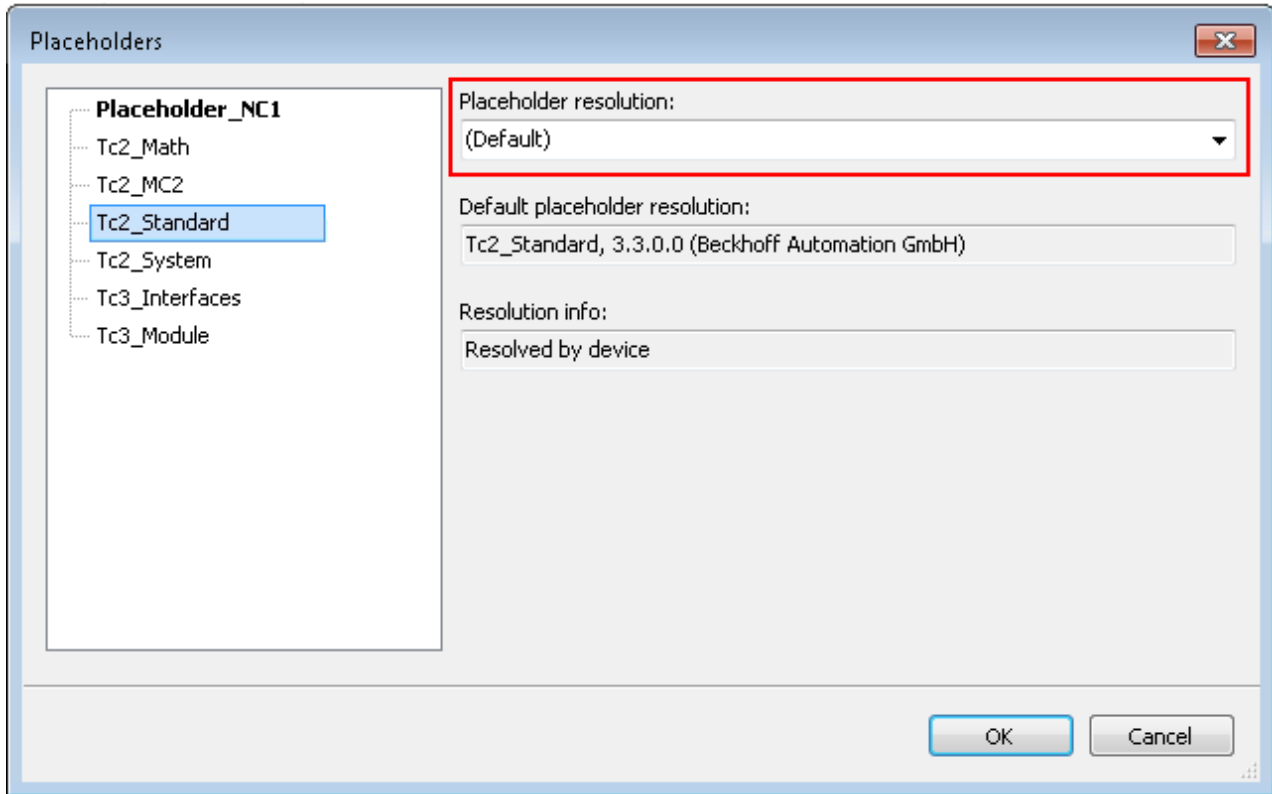
```
<TreeItem>
<PlcLibDef>
  <ScanLibraries>
    <Active>true</Active>
  </ScanLibraries>
</PlcLibDef>
</TreeItem>
```

5.9.10 ITcPlcLibraryManager::SetEffectiveResolution

Sets the Effective Resolution, meaning the effective library, of a placeholder.

```
HRESULT SetEffectiveResolution(BSTR bstrPlaceholderName, BSTR strLibName, BSTR bstrVersion, BSTR bstrDistributor);
```

In TwinCAT XAE, the Effective Resolution can be set via the Placeholder configuration window.



Please note: The Default Resolution of a placeholder is set when the placeholder is added via `ITcPlcLibraryManager [▶ 171]::AddPlaceholder() [▶ 173]`.

Parameters

<code>bstrPlaceholderName</code>	[in] Placeholder name for which the Effective Resolution should be set.
<code>bstrLibName</code>	[in] Library name for Effective Resolution.
<code>bstrVersion</code>	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Library version.
<code>bstrDistributor</code>	[in, optional, defaultvalue("")] Company which created the library.

Return Values

<code>S_OK</code>	Effective Resolution successfully set.
-------------------	--

5.9.11 ITcPlcLibraryManager::UninstallLibrary

Uninstalls a library from a repository.

```
HRESULT UninstallLibrary(BSTR bstrRepositoryName, BSTR bstrLibraryName, BSTR bstrVersion, BSTR bstrDistributor);
```


Parameters

bstrRepositoryName	[in] : Name of repository
bstrLibraryName	[in] : Name of library
bstrVersion	[in, optional] : Version of library
bstrDistributor	[in, optional] : Distributor of library

5.10 ITcPlcReferences

ITcPlcReferences represents a collection of [ITcPlcLibRef \[▸ 178\]](#) objects, which is returned for example when using the property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::References](#).

Methods (in VTable Order)

Requirements

ITcPlcLibRepositories methods	Description	Available since
get_Item() [▸ 180]	Returns an item of type ITcPlcLibRef [▸ 178] which is located on a specified position.	TwinCAT 3.1

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibRepositories properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
Count	Yes / No	Returns the amount of ITcPlcLibRef [▸ 178] objects in the collection	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.11 ITcPlcLibrary

Represents a single PLC library when used with collection [ITcPlcLibraries \[▸ 178\]](#) and method [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::ScanLibraries\(\) \[▸ 175\]](#) or property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::References](#).

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibrary properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
DisplayName	Yes / No	Display name to identify library in library list	TwinCAT 3.1
Distributor	Yes / No	Library creator	TwinCAT 3.1
Name	Yes / No	Library name	TwinCAT 3.1
Version	Yes / No	Library version	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information**Requirements**

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.12 ITcPlcLibraries

5.12.1 ITcPlcLibraries

ITcPlcLibraries represents a collection of [ITcPlcLibrary \[▸ 177\]](#) objects, for example when using method [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::ScanLibraries\(\) \[▸ 175\]](#) or property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::Libraries](#).

Methods (in VTable Order)**Requirements**

ITcPlcLibraries methods	Description	Available since
get_Item() [▸ 178]	Returns item of type ITcPlcLibrary [▸ 177] which is located on a specified position.	TwinCAT 3.1

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibraries proper- ties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
Count	Yes / No	Returns the amount of ITcPlcLibrary [▸ 177] objects in the collection	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.12.2 ITcPlcLibraries::get_Item

Returns ITcPlcLibrary object on specified position.

```
HRESULT AddLibrary(long n, ITcPlcLibrary** pipType);
```

Parameters

n [in] Position of item in list.
pipType [out, retval] Returns object of type ITcPlcLibrary

5.13 ITcPlcLibRef

ITcPlcLibRef represents a base class for either [ITcPlcLibrary \[▸ 177\]](#) or [ITcPlcPlaceholderRef \[▸ 179\]](#) objects.

Properties (in VTable Order)**Requirements**

ITcPlcLibRepositories properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
Name	Yes / No	Returns the name of the ITcPlcLibRef object	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.14 ITcPlcPlaceholderRef

Represents a single PLC placeholder when used with collection [ITcPlcReferences \[▸ 177\]](#) and method [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::ScanLibraries\(\) \[▸ 175\]](#) or property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::References](#).

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibrary properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
DisplayName	Yes / No	Display name to identify library in library list	TwinCAT 3.1
Distributor	Yes / No	Library creator	TwinCAT 3.1
Name	Yes / No	Library name	TwinCAT 3.1
Version	Yes / No	Library version	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information**Requirements**

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.15 ITcPlcLibRepository

The ITcPlcLibRepository interface represents a single repository, for example when used with collection [ITcPlcLibRepositories \[▸ 180\]](#) and property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▸ 171\]::Repositories](#).

Properties

ITcPlcLibRepository properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
Folder	Yes / No	Path to repository (file system)	TwinCAT 3.1
Name	Yes / No	Repository name.	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information**Requirements**

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.16 ITcPlcLibRepositories**5.16.1 ITcPlcLibRepositories**

ITcPlcLibRepositories represents a collection of [ITcPlcLibRepository \[▶ 179\]](#) objects, for example when using property [ITcPlcLibraryManager \[▶ 171\]::Repositories](#).

Methods (in VTable Order)**Requirements**

ITcPlcLibRepositories methods	Description	Available since
get_Item() [▶ 180]	Returns item of type ITcPlcLibRepository [▶ 179] which is located on a specified position.	TwinCAT 3.1

Properties (in VTable Order)

ITcPlcLibRepositories properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
Count	Yes / No	Returns the amount of ITcPlcLibRepository [▶ 179] objects in the collection	TwinCAT 3.1

Version information

Required TwinCAT version
This interface is supported in TwinCAT 3.1 and above

5.16.2 ITcPlcLibRepositories::get_Item

Returns ITcPlcLibRepository object on specified position.

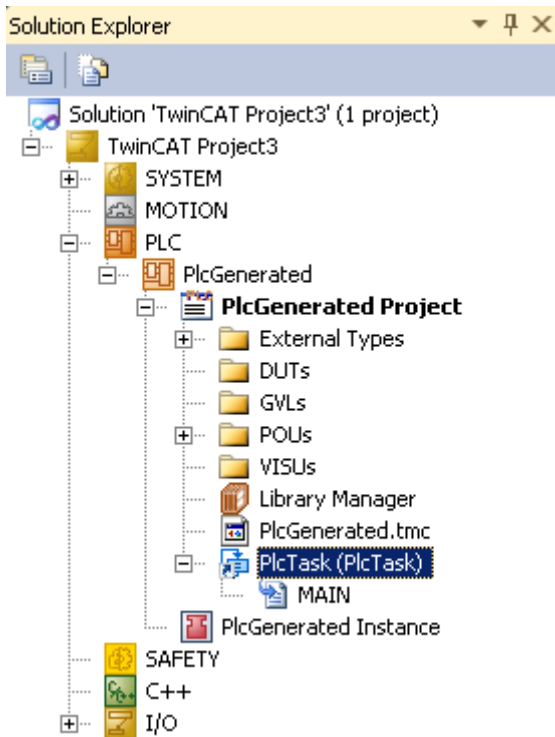
```
HRESULT AddLibrary(long n, ITcPlcLibRepository** ppRepo);
```

Parameters

n	[in] Position of item in list.
pipType	[out, retval] Returns object of type ITcPlcLibRepository

5.17 ITcPlcTaskReference

The ITcPlcTaskReference interface enables programmers to get or set the currently linked task of a PLC project. This matches the following TwinCAT XAE entry:



Properties (in VTable Order)

Requirements

ITcPlcTaskReference properties	Get / Set	Description	Available since
LinkedTask	Yes / Yes	Gets or sets the linked task of a PLC project. When setting a new linked task, the task will be specified as a string which represents the path to the task in the TwinCAT XAE tree.	TwinCAT 3.1

6 Samples

6.1 Sample downloads

Most of the samples and HowTo's are available as code snippets in our "Best Practice" section to allow an easy re-usability. However, this download section also provides ready-to-use samples as either binary or source code.

Important notes:

- All C# samples are based on a Visual Studio project with at least .NET 4.0
- All C# samples include a reference to the "TwinCAT XAE Base" type library in version 2.1. Depending on the installed TwinCAT version, the reference to this library may need to be updated, see [Installation article \[▶ 17\]](#)
- Please note that all Visual Studio Plugin samples are only operable under Visual Studio 2010 and 2012. To develop Add-Ins for Visual Studio 2013, Microsoft recommends to use the VSPackage Extension, as described on the corresponding MSDN website about [Creating Add-ins and Wizards](#).

SampleNo.	Description	Programming / Scripting language	Minimum TwinCAT version	Download
1	Scripting Container [▶ 182]	C#	Depends on script	ScriptingContainer Binaries only ScriptingContainer Source
2	CodeGenerationDemo [▶ 186]	C#	3.1 Build 4014.0	CodeGenerationDemo Binaries only CodeGenerationDemo Source
3	Visual Studio Plugin PlcVersionInfo [▶ 188]	C#	3.1 Build 4016.6	PluginSample PlcVersionInfo.zip

6.2 Scripting Container

6.2.1 Scripting Container

The Scripting Container ([download here \[▶ 182\]](#)) is a C# WPF application which represents a collection of all available Automation Interface samples. Most of these samples are also available as a standalone sample download - however, as new samples become available, they will be first published in the Scripting Container before creating a separate sample. Therefore we recommend to become familiar with this application and to check periodically for new samples.

This article describes the general structure of the Scripting Container application and consists of the following topics:

- Basic structure
- First time setup

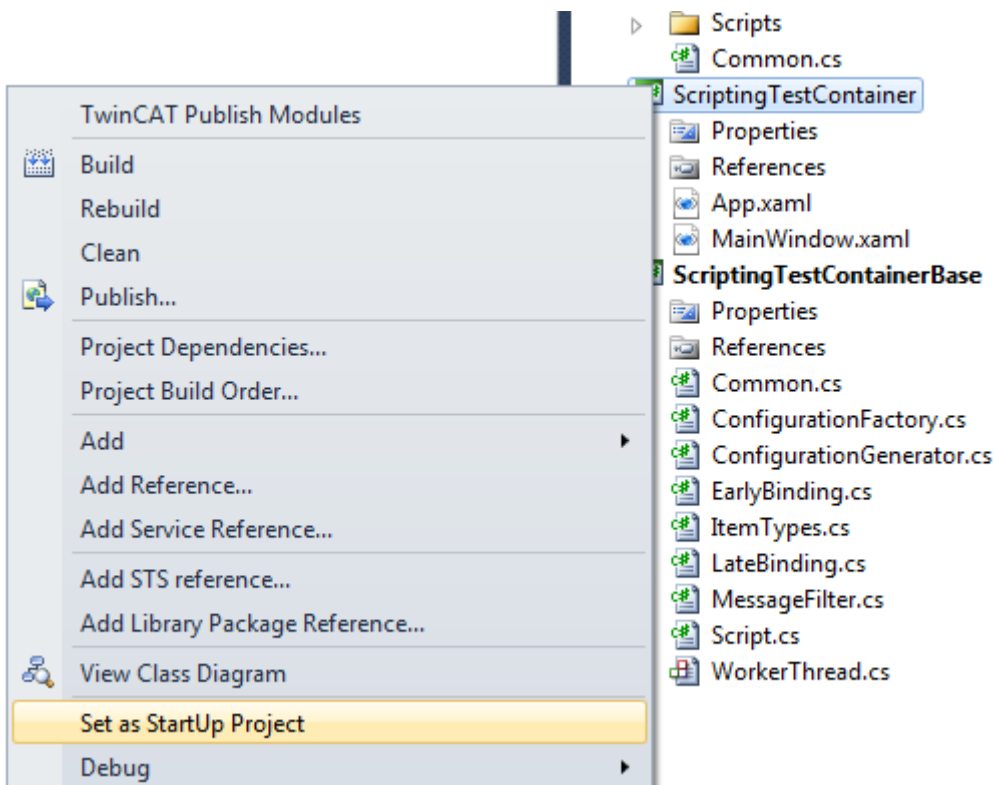
Basic structure

As mentioned above the ScriptingContainer consists of a collection of Automation Interface samples, which are represented by different projects (each with an own UI) within the ScriptingContainer. The following table gives an overview about all available projects and links to the corresponding documentation article.

Project name	Description
CodeGenerationDemo [▶ 186]	Implements AI code that reads three different TwinCAT configurations from a XML file.
CopyProjectDemo	Copies I/Os and Axis configuration from an existing TwinCAT configuration to a new configuration.
ScriptingTestContainer [▶ 183]	Provides a collection of available Automation Interface samples, which can be executed from a graphical user interface.

First time

When opening the ScriptingContainer for the first time, please set the StartUp Project to the desired user interface, e.g. "ScriptingTestContainer" by right-clicking this project and selecting "Set as StartUp Project". This ensures that the correct GUI will be loaded upon application start-up.



You can now start the application by going to the menu "Debug" and clicking on "Start Debugging". By starting the application this way, you can set breakpoints or step through code execution to easily evaluate the executed script.

6.2.2 Projects

6.2.2.1 Scripting Container: ScriptingTestContainer

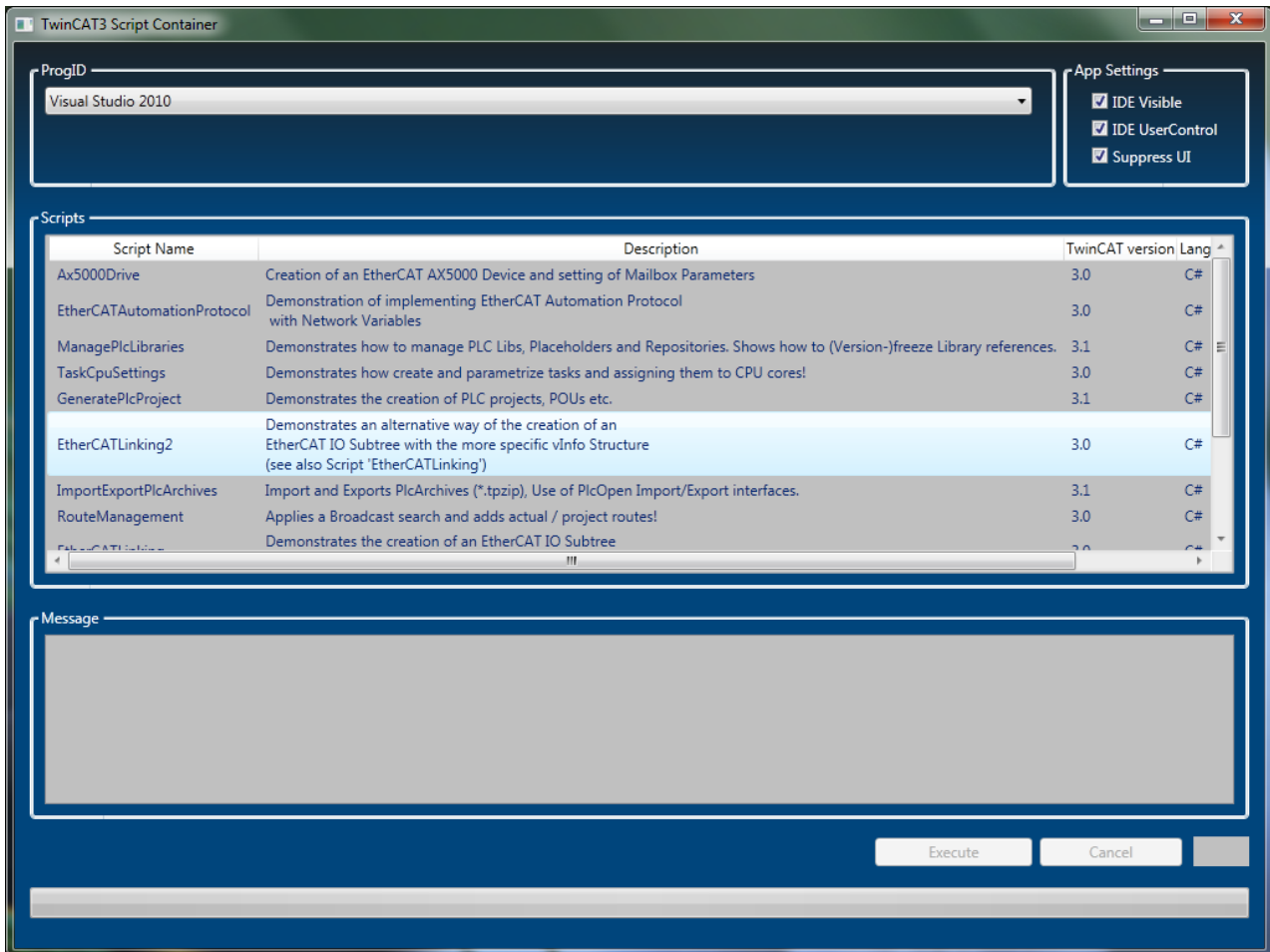
This article describes the basic structure of the ScriptingTestContainer project and consists of the following topics:

- The Graphical User Interface (GUI)
- Early and late bound script samples
- Location of sample scripts ("**Where's the Automation Interface code???**")
- Behind the scenes: Class structure
- Behind the scenes: Method structure

- Behind the scenes: Implementing own samples

The Graphical User Interface (GUI)

After you have started the Scripting Container application, its GUI will look as follows:



The dropdown box at the top of the window lets you choose the version of Visual Studio [▶ 30] that you would like to use to create the TwinCAT configuration.

There are a variety of sample scripts available, which can be selected in the table at the center of the window.

To execute a script, simply select it from the table and click on "Execute". During code execution, the script displays status information in the message logging window below the script table.

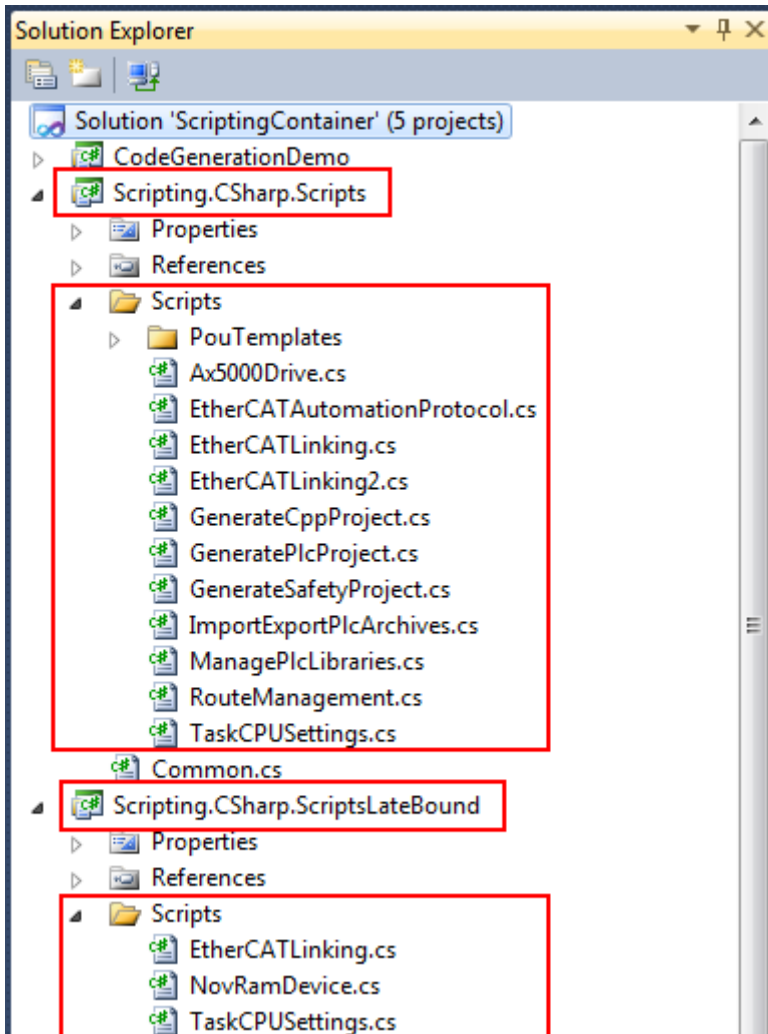
To change the visibility behavior of Visual Studio, you can switch the checkboxes in the upper right corner of the window. By default, Visual Studio is shown during script execution and not closed after the script finishes.

Early and late bound script samples

This application contains both - early and late bound - script samples. Late bound samples make use of the .NET data type "dynamic" and therefore determine an object's data type during runtime whereas early bound scripts use the corresponding data type of an object during the creation of an object. Both ways have their advantages and disadvantages and it depends on the developer and project which type handling is to be preferred.

Location of sample scripts ("Where's the Automation Interface code??")

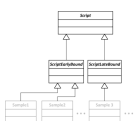
All script samples - early and late bound - are located in an own project container within the Visual Studio solution: **Scripting.CSharp.Scripts** for early bound and **Scripting.CSharp.ScriptsLateBound** for late bound sample code.



Each script file implements a method OnExecute() in which the TwinCAT Automation Interface script code is implemented.

Behind the scenes: Class structure

Each code sample is represented by an own class which derives either from the abstract class "ScriptEarlyBound" or "ScriptLateBound" - depending on the data type handling used in the sample. The difference between these two classes is that the ScriptEarlyBound class uses static typing for the DTE and Solution objects. The ScriptLateBound class uses dynamic typing instead. The following UML diagram explains the class hierarchy in more detail. The grey classes represent the actual sample scripts, which either derive from class ScriptEarlyBound (when static typing should be used) or from class ScriptLateBound (when dynamic typing should be used).



The abstract class "Script" defines methods and attributes which are common for both the ScriptEarlyBound and ScriptLateBound classes.

Behind the scenes: Method structure

Each sample class contains three methods which are used in the Scripting Container to execute the Automation Interface code. The following table shows their meaning.

Signature of derived method	Description
OnInitialize (dynamic dte, dynamic solution, IWorker worker)	The OnInitialize() method is usually used for Automation Interface code which opens or prepares a new TwinCAT XAE configuration.
OnCleanUp (IWorker worker)	The OnCleanUp() method may be used to clean-up the TwinCAT XAE configuration after code execution.
OnExecute (IWorker worker)	This method is executing the actual Automation Interface script code.

Please also compare the implementation of existing sample scripts to get a better understanding about how each method works.

Behind the scenes: Implementing own samples

It is easily possible to implement own Automation Interface samples into the Scripting Container. To implement own Automation Interface code, a developer only needs to decide which binding he would like to use and then implement a new class which derives from one of the main classes (ScriptEarlyBound or ScriptLateBound) and then implement the derived methods.

6.3 CodeGenerationDemo

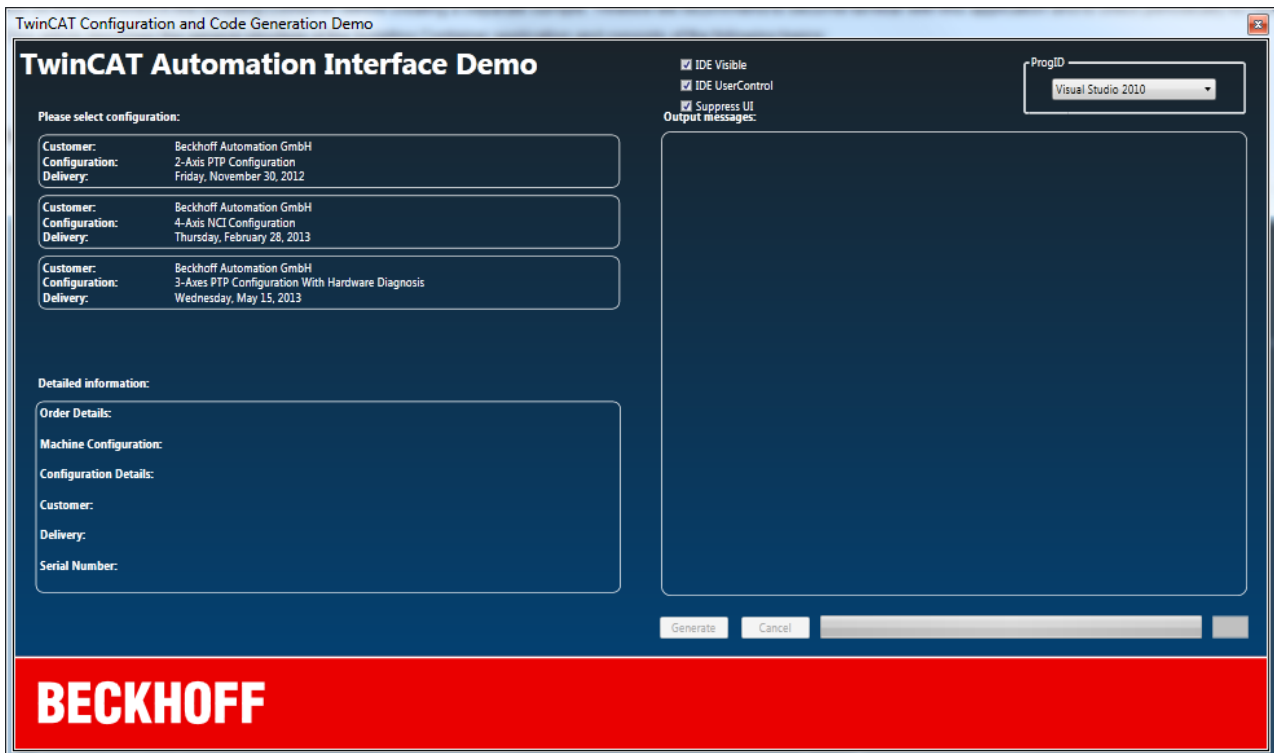
The Scripting Container ([download here](#) [▶ 182]) is a C# WPF application which represents a collection of all available Automation Interface samples. Most of these samples are also available as a standalone sample download - however, as new samples become available, they will be first published in the Scripting Container before creating a separate sample. Therefore we recommend to become familiar with this application and to check periodically for new samples.

This article describes the general structure of the Scripting Container application and consists of the following topics:

- The Graphical User Interface (GUI)
- Location of sample scripts ("Where's the Automation Interface code??")
- Location of data ("Where does all the data come from?")

The Graphical User Interface (GUI)

After you have started the CodeGenerationDemo application, its GUI will look as follows:



On the left hand side you can select from three different TwinCAT configuration, each with its own I/O, Axis and PLC configuration.

The dropdown box on the top right side lets you choose which Visual Studio version the script code should use to create the configuration - in case you have different Visual Studio versions installed on your system.

To start the configuration creation, simply select a configuration and press "Generate".

Location of sample scripts ("Where's the Automation Interface code???")

The actual Automation Interface code can be found within the following classes:

- CodeGenerationScript.cs
- ConfigurationScriptA.cs
- ConfigurationScriptB.cs
- ConfigurationScriptC.cs

Depending on the selected configuration, the CodeGenerationDemo application instantiates one of the three ConfigurationScriptX.cs classes, which all derive from CodeGenerationScript.cs.

Each class provides corresponding methods for creating the PLC, Axis or I/O configuration.

Location of data ("Where does all the data come from?")

Each configuration has its own I/O, Axis and PLC settings. As you may have already noticed, this configuration is not hard-coded into the Automation Interface code (like in other AI samples). In this demo, these settings are stored in an XML file that can be found under "CodeGenerationDemo\Data\Orders.xml". This XML file specifies two important XML sub-structures which are used to store TwinCAT settings.

Main description of a configuration:

```
<MachineOrders>
<Order id="1">
...
</Order>
</MachineOrders>
```

This structure defines a configuration and sets its global descriptive properties, e.g. Name, Description, These properties will be shown on the GUI below the configuration selection.

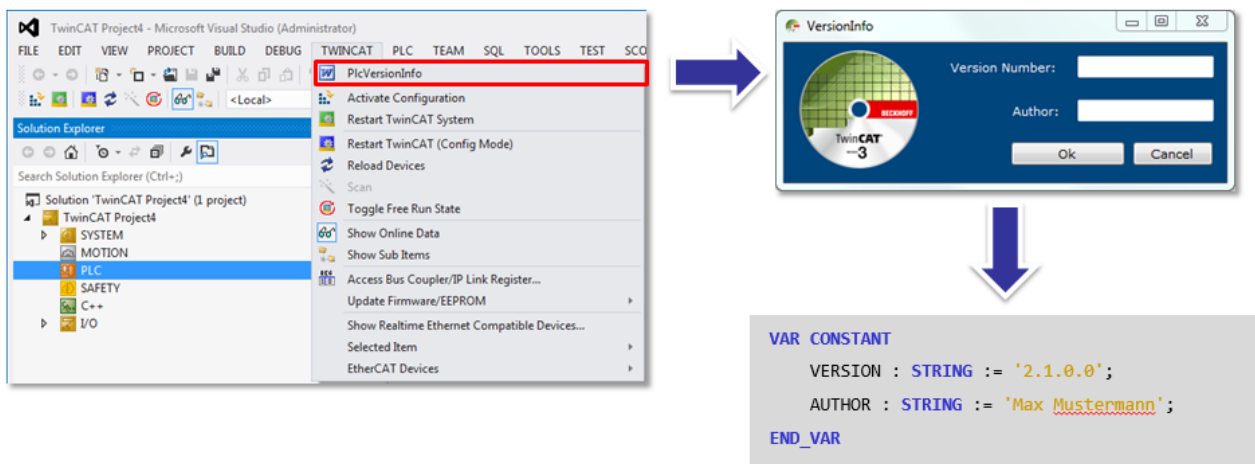
Actual configuration with a reference to its description:

```
<AvailableConfigurations>
<Configuration id="..." name="...">
...
</Configuration>
</AvailableConfigurations>
```

This structure specifies the I/Os, Axis, PLC libraries and linking.

6.4 Visual Studio Plugin - PlcVersionInfo

The PlcVersionInfo sample demonstrates how to use the TwinCAT Automation Interface from within a Visual Studio Plugin. Its main purpose is to show how to create a simple tool that extends the PLC engineering with more functionalities. The small user interface allows to enter version and author information for PLC function blocks. When executing the sample, this information is placed in a VAR_CONSTANT area in all functionblocks within a PLC project. Although this might seem a pretty simple example, it clearly shows how powerful Visual Studio Plugins can be and how they might greatly enhance the users engineering experience.



For more information about Visual Studio Plugins, please consult the MSDN webpage.

Basic concept

As previously noted, the tool starts an iteration over all PLC tree items of a PLC project. If the current tree item is either a functionblock, function or program, then the declaration text of the tree item is determined and extended with a VAR_CONSTANT block.

Notes about executing and debugging Visual Studio Plugins

Visual Studio Plugins may be located in different folders so that Visual Studio recognizes them. This documentation assumes that the Plugin should only be made available for a specific user account which is why the Plugin will be placed in a directory within the user profile. For more information, please consult the MSDN webpage about [Add-In Registration](#).

To execute the Plugin without debugging, please copy the compiled DLL and the .AddIn file to the directory c:\Users\username\Documents\Visual Studio 201x\Addins\ and restart Visual Studio.

To execute the Plugin with debugging, simply execute the debugger from within the Plugin solution. If this causes you issues, you may also copy the .AddIn file the Addins directory (mentioned above) and edit the file with a text editor of your choice to change the <Assembly> node to the path of the compiled debug DLL. Then start a Visual Studio instance and attach your debugger to this instance/process.

The Visual Studio Plugin will be made available in the TwinCAT menu in Visual Studio.

7 Appendix

7.1 Miscellaneous error codes

The following error codes represent the HRESULT values of Automation Interface methods, as explained in the [API reference \[► 115\]](#).

```
typedefenum TCSYSMANAGERHRESULTS
{
    [helpstring("ITcSmTreeItem not found!" (ITcSmTreeItem nicht gefunden!))]
    TSM_E_ITEMNOTFOUND = 0x98510001,
    [helpstring("Invalid Item Type!" (Ungültiger Elementtyp!))]
    TSM_E_INVALIDITEMTYPE = 0x98510002,
    [helpstring("Invalid SubItem Type!" (Ungültiger Unterelementtyp!))]
    TSM_E_INVALIDITEMSUBTYPE = 0x98510003,
    [helpstring("Mismatching Items!" (Nicht übereinstimmende Elemente!))]
    TSM_E_MISMATCHINGITEMS = 0x98510004,
    [helpstring("Corrupted Link" (Fehlerhafte Verknüpfung))]
    TSM_E_CORRUPTEDLINK = 0x98510005,
    [helpstring("Item still referenced!" (Element immer noch referenziert!))]
    TSM_E_ITEMREFERENCED = 0x98510006,
    [helpstring("Item already deleted!" (Element bereits gelöscht!))]
    TSM_E_ITEMDELETED = 0x98510007,
    [helpstring("XML Error" (XML-Fehler))]
    TSM_E_XMLERROR = 0x98510008,
} TCSYSMANAGERHRESULTS;
```

Please note that the following list of COM error codes is just a snippet and not complete:

Error	Description
RPC_E_CALL_REJECTED	The COM-Server has rejected the call. Please read our article about how to implement an own Message Filter [► 26] to circumvent this error.
Return value of method CoRegisterMessageFilter() <> 0	One cause of this error could be that the COM message filter has been applied to a MTA apartment. Message filters can only be applied to STA-Threads. Please view our Message Filter [► 26] article for more information about message filters, including STA and MTA.
Error message "A reference to Beckhoff TwinCAT XAE Base 2.0 Type Library could not be added" when referencing the type library in Visual Studio.	The type library is not correctly registered. Please re-register the type library by executing the following command: <i>C:\Windows\Microsoft .NET\Framework\v4.0.xxxx\regtlbv12.exe C:\TwinCAT3\Components\Base\TCatSysManager.tlb</i> xxxxx is the version of the currently installed version of the .NET Framework 4.0.

More Information:
www.beckhoff.com/te1000/

Beckhoff Automation GmbH & Co. KG
Hülshorstweg 20
33415 Verl
Germany
Phone: +49 5246 9630
info@beckhoff.com
www.beckhoff.com

